



# Hitachi Thin Image

## User Guide

Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G200, G400, G600, G800

Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F400, F600, F800

Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000

© 2014 - 2015 Hitachi, Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or stored in a database or retrieval system for any purpose without the express written permission of Hitachi, Ltd.

Hitachi, Ltd., reserves the right to make changes to this document at any time without notice and assumes no responsibility for its use. This document contains the most current information available at the time of publication. When new or revised information becomes available, this entire document will be updated and distributed to all registered users.

Some of the features described in this document might not be currently available. Refer to the most recent product announcement for information about feature and product availability, or contact Hitachi Data Systems Corporation at [https://support.hds.com/en\\_us/contact-us.html](https://support.hds.com/en_us/contact-us.html).

**Notice:** Hitachi, Ltd., products and services can be ordered only under the terms and conditions of the applicable Hitachi Data Systems Corporation agreements. The use of Hitachi, Ltd., products is governed by the terms of your agreements with Hitachi Data Systems Corporation.

By using this software, you agree that you are responsible for:

1. Acquiring the relevant consents as may be required under local privacy laws or otherwise from employees and other individuals to access relevant data; and
2. Verifying that data continues to be held, retrieved, deleted, or otherwise processed in accordance with relevant laws.

Hitachi is a registered trademark of Hitachi, Ltd., in the United States and other countries. Hitachi Data Systems is a registered trademark and service mark of Hitachi, Ltd., in the United States and other countries.

Archivas, Essential NAS Platform, HiCommand, Hi-Track, ShadowImage, Tagmaserve, Tagmasoft, Tagmasolve, Tagmastore, TrueCopy, Universal Star Network, and Universal Storage Platform are registered trademarks of Hitachi Data Systems.

AIX, AS/400, DB2, Domino, DS6000, DS8000, Enterprise Storage Server, ESCON, FICON, FlashCopy, IBM, Lotus, MVS, OS/390, RS/6000, S/390, System z9, System z10, Tivoli, VM/ESA, z/OS, z9, z10, zSeries, z/VM, and z/VSE are registered trademarks or trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

All other trademarks, service marks, and company names in this document or web site are properties of their respective owners.

Microsoft product screen shots are reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

**Notice on Export Controls.** The technical data and technology inherent in this Document may be subject to U.S. export control laws, including the U.S. Export Administration Act and its associated regulations, and may be subject to export or import regulations in other countries. Reader agrees to comply strictly with all such regulations and acknowledges that Reader has the responsibility to obtain licenses to export, re-export, or import the Document and any Compliant Products.



# Contents

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Preface.....   | 9  |
| Intended audience.....   | 10 |
| Product version.....   | 10 |
| Release notes.....   | 10 |
| Document revision level.....   | 10 |
| Changes in this revision.....  | 11 |
| Referenced documents.....  | 11 |
| Document conventions.....  | 12 |
| Conventions for storage capacity values.....                                       | 14 |
| Accessing product documentation.....   | 15 |
| Getting help.....  | 15 |
| Comments.....  | 15 |
| <br>   |    |
| 1 Overview of Thin Image.....  | 17 |
| Thin Image workflow.....   | 18 |
| Workflow for storing Thin Image snapshot data.....                                 | 19 |
| Components of Thin Image.....  | 20 |
| Thin Image pairs.....  | 20 |
| Consistency and snapshot groups.....   | 20 |
| VSP family software applications for Thin Image.....                               | 21 |
| How Thin Image works.....  | 22 |
| How Thin Image uses pools and pool volumes.....                                    | 22 |
| Usage level rebalancing among parity groups.....                                   | 23 |
| How Thin Image uses V-VOLs.....  | 24 |
| How Thin Image pairs are created.....  | 24 |
| Workflow for creating groups and storing snapshot data using CCI.....              | 25 |
| Methods of storing snapshot data.....  | 27 |
| Thin Image pair restoration.....   | 29 |
| How Thin Image pair status changes.....  | 29 |
| Thin Image host access and pair status.....  | 30 |
| The copy threshold option and host server I/O performance for Thin Image.....      | 31 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with other Hitachi software applications.....           | 32 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes that have Data Retention Utility access attributes..... | 33 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with Hitachi Volume Migration.....                      | 36 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with ShadowImage.....                                   | 36 |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with TrueCopy and Universal Replicator.....  | 39 |
| Volume backup with Thin Image, TrueCopy, and Universal Replicator in a 3DC multitarget configuration workflow.....          | 40 |
| Volume backup with Thin Image and Universal Replicator in a 3DC multitarget configuration workflow (VSP G1000 only).....    | 41 |
| Volume backup with Thin Image and Universal Replicator in a 3DC cascade configuration workflow (VSP G1000 only).....        | 42 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with global-active device.....   | 42 |
| Storage system configuration with Thin Image and GAD.....   | 43 |
| Consistency group configuration with Thin Image and GAD.....  | 47 |
| Snapshot group configuration with Thin Image and GAD.....   | 49 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe in a single storage system..... | 51 |
| Sharing Thin Image volumes with Resource Partition Manager.....   | 52 |
| Acronyms and abbreviations for VSP family storage system software applications used in this guide.....                      | 52 |

## 2 Thin Image system and planning requirements..... 53

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Thin Image system requirements.....   | 54 |
| Installing Thin Image.....  | 54 |
| Uninstalling Thin Image.....  | 54 |
| Thin Image licensed capacity requirements.....  | 54 |
| Thin Image shared (or control) memory requirements.....                               | 55 |
| Thin Image volume requirements.....   | 56 |
| Thin Image data pool requirements.....  | 58 |
| Thin Image consistency group requirements.....  | 59 |
| Thin Image snapshot group requirements.....   | 60 |
| Thin Image planning requirements.....   | 60 |
| Calculating the number of Thin Image pairs based on pair tables.....                  | 60 |
| Calculating Thin Image pairs based on the snapshot estimated manageable capacity..... | 61 |
| Calculating Thin Image pairs based on cache management devices.....                   | 61 |
| Calculating the number of cache management devices.....                               | 62 |
| Thin Image cache management device requirements.....                                  | 62 |
| Calculating and assigning pool capacity.....  | 63 |
| Resolving insufficient pool capacity.....   | 63 |
| Pool capacity calculations.....   | 64 |
| Creating a backup of data.....  | 64 |
| Universal Volume Manager and external volumes used as pool-VOLs.....                  | 64 |
| Simultaneous processing of multiple Thin Image pair tasks.....                        | 65 |

## 3 Configuring Thin Image..... 67

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Prerequisites for configuring Thin Image.....              | 68 |
| Workflow for configuring Thin Image.....                   | 68 |
| Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs.....   | 69 |
| Creating Thin Image data pools.....                        | 69 |
| Selecting pool volumes.....                                | 72 |
| Pool creation and data drive type priority.....            | 74 |
| Workflow for registering virtual volumes.....              | 75 |
| Editing the SSID for virtual volumes (VSP G1000 only)..... | 75 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Changing LDEV settings.....  | 79         |
| Creating LDEVs.....  | 82         |
| Removing LDEVs from registering tasks.....   | 87         |
| Recognizing devices from the host server.....  | 88         |
| Host server stoppages and device recognition issues.....   | 89         |
| Overview of using CCI to run commands through in-band connections.....   | 89         |
| Changing system options that affect Thin Image performance.....  | 90         |
| <b>4 Managing Thin Image Pairs.....</b>  | <b>93</b>  |
| Thin Image pair tasks.....   | 95         |
| Checking Thin Image pair status.....   | 95         |
| Reloading Thin Image configuration information.....  | 96         |
| Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs.....   | 96         |
| Workflow for creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator.....   | 96         |
| Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator.....  | 97         |
| Selecting a pool as your primary volume.....   | 100        |
| Example of creating complex Thin Image pairs.....  | 101        |
| Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI.....   | 102        |
| Workflow for defining Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using Device Manager - Storage Navigator..... | 103        |
| Snapshot data storage methods.....   | 103        |
| Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data.....   | 104        |
| Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data using CCI.....   | 105        |
| Workflow for splitting Thin Image pairs in consistency groups.....   | 105        |
| Using consistency group pair-split with shared volumes.....  | 106        |
| Restoring Thin Image pairs.....  | 108        |
| Failure during Thin Image pair restore.....  | 110        |
| Restoring suspended Thin Image pairs.....  | 110        |
| Thin Image pair resynchronization.....   | 110        |
| Pair resynchronization methods.....  | 111        |
| Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs.....  | 111        |
| Assigning MU numbers to deleted snapshot data.....   | 112        |
| Deleting Thin Image pairs.....   | 113        |
| Accelerating the Thin Image pair deletion process.....   | 114        |
| Removing Thin Image snapshot groups.....   | 114        |
| Assigning secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data.....  | 115        |
| Assigning secondary volumes to snapshot data after creating new Thin Image pairs.....  | 115        |
| Assigning secondary volumes to snapshot data of existing Thin Image pairs.....   | 117        |
| Releasing assignment of secondary volumes from Thin Image pair snapshot data.....  | 118        |
| Changing assignment of secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data.....   | 119        |
| <b>5 Monitoring and maintaining Thin Image.....</b>  | <b>121</b> |
| Monitoring pair information.....   | 122        |
| Viewing summary replication information.....   | 122        |
| Viewing local replication summary information.....   | 123        |
| Viewing the number of pairs.....   | 126        |
| Viewing the list of primary volumes.....   | 126        |
| Viewing pair properties .....  | 127        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Thin Image pair status definitions.....                                       | 127        |
| Viewing pair synchronization rates.....                                       | 128        |
| Monitoring consistency groups.....  | 130        |
| Viewing the number of consistency groups.....                                 | 130        |
| Viewing the list of consistency groups.....                                   | 132        |
| Viewing consistency group properties.....                                     | 133        |
| Viewing Thin Image pair task history.....                                     | 135        |
| Thin Image task code definitions.....   | 137        |
| Viewing licensed capacities.....  | 137        |
| Viewing the number of cache management devices.....                           | 138        |
| Managing pools.....   | 138        |
| Monitoring pool information.....  | 139        |
| Viewing used pool capacity.....   | 141        |
| Viewing used capacity by pool.....  | 141        |
| Viewing used pool capacity by Thin Image P-VOL.....                           | 141        |
| Viewing formatted pool capacity and pool usage rates.....                     | 142        |
| Increasing pool capacity.....   | 142        |
| Failure of available pool capacity formatting and pool capacity increase..... | 146        |
| Decreasing pool capacity.....   | 147        |
| Stopping the process of decreasing pool capacity.....                         | 150        |
| Editing the data pool warning threshold.....                                  | 152        |
| Editing pool names.....   | 155        |
| Workflow for recovering blocked pools.....                                    | 157        |
| Recovering blocked pools.....   | 158        |
| Workflow for deleting pools.....  | 159        |
| Deleting pools.....   | 159        |
| Managing virtual volumes.....   | 160        |
| Editing virtual volume names.....   | 160        |
| Workflow for deleting V-VOLs specified for Thin Image S-VOLs.....             | 163        |
| Deleting virtual volumes.....   | 164        |
| Viewing snapshot data capacity (VSP G1000 only).....                          | 165        |
| Maintaining pairs during storage system maintenance.....                      | 165        |
| Switching off the power supply.....   | 166        |
| Power supply and existing shared (or control) memory.....                     | 166        |
| Power supply and losing data in shared (or control) memory.....               | 166        |
| Replacing the microcode (or firmware) offline.....                            | 167        |
| <b>6 Troubleshooting Thin Image.....</b>                                      | <b>169</b> |
| General troubleshooting.....  | 170        |
| Completing SIMs.....  | 172        |
| Workflow for completing SIMs related to cache management devices.....         | 172        |
| Calculating the number of remaining cache management devices.....             | 173        |
| Workflow for correcting pool-related SIMs.....                                | 174        |
| Automatic completion of SIMs (VSP G1000 only).....                            | 175        |
| Manually completing SIMs (VSP G1000 only).....                                | 175        |
| Contacting Hitachi Data Systems customer support.....                         | 176        |
| <b>A CCI command reference for Thin Image.....</b>                            | <b>177</b> |
| Pair tasks using CCI or Device Manager - Storage Navigator.....               | 178        |
| CCI pair command results.....   | 179        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Troubleshooting with Command Control Interface.....  | 179        |
| Command Control Interface SSB2 codes.....  | 180        |
| Notes on using Thin Image primary volumes as TrueCopy or Universal Replicator<br>pair volumes..... | 187        |
| Notes on acquiring snapshot data.....  | 187        |
| <b>B Thin Image GUI reference.....</b>   | <b>189</b> |
| Replication window.....  | 190        |
| Local Replication window.....  | 192        |
| View Pair Synchronization Rate window.....   | 202        |
| View Pair Properties window.....   | 204        |
| History window.....  | 208        |
| Consistency Group Properties window.....   | 210        |
| Create TI Pairs wizard.....  | 212        |
| Create TI Pairs window.....  | 213        |
| Assign Secondary Volumes window.....   | 218        |
| Create TI Pairs confirmation window.....   | 221        |
| Select Pool window.....  | 224        |
| Split Pairs wizard.....  | 225        |
| Split Pairs window.....  | 225        |
| Split Pairs confirmation window.....   | 227        |
| Resync Pairs wizard.....   | 228        |
| Resync Pairs window.....   | 229        |
| Resync Pairs confirmation window.....  | 230        |
| Delete Pairs window.....   | 232        |
| Edit Local Replica Options wizard.....   | 233        |
| Edit Local Replica Options window.....   | 234        |
| Edit Local Replica Options confirmation window.....  | 236        |
| TI Pairs window.....   | 238        |
| Assign Secondary Volumes wizard.....   | 240        |
| Assign Secondary Volumes window.....   | 241        |
| Assign Secondary Volumes confirmation window.....  | 244        |
| Remove Secondary Volumes window.....   | 247        |
| <br>Glossary.....  | <br>249    |
| <br>Index.....   | <br>271    |







# Preface

This document describes and provides instructions for using Hitachi Thin Image to plan, configure, and perform pair tasks on a Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform (VSP) storage system.

Please read this document carefully to understand how to use this product, and maintain a copy for reference purposes.

- ☐ [Intended audience](#)
- ☐ [Product version](#)
- ☐ [Release notes](#)
- ☐ [Document revision level](#)
- ☐ [Changes in this revision](#)
- ☐ [Referenced documents](#)
- ☐ [Document conventions](#)
- ☐ [Conventions for storage capacity values](#)
- ☐ [Accessing product documentation](#)
- ☐ [Getting help](#)
- ☐ [Comments](#)

## Intended audience

This document is intended for system administrators, Hitachi Data Systems representatives, and authorized service providers who install, configure, and operate the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform storage system.

Readers of this document should be familiar with the following:

- Data processing and RAID storage systems and their basic functions.
- The Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform storage system and the *Hardware Guide* for your storage system model.
- The Hitachi Command Suite software and the Hitachi Command Suite User Guide or the Device Manager - Storage Navigator software and the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system model.
- Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning, Hitachi Dynamic Tiering, Hitachi LUN Manager, Hitachi LUN Expansion, Hitachi Virtual LVI, Hitachi Virtual LUN, and Hitachi Data Retention Utility.

## Product version

This document revision applies to the following microcode or firmware:

- VSP G1000: microcode 80-03-3x
- VSP G200, G400, G600, G800, VSP F400, F600, F800: firmware 83-02-0x

## Release notes

Read the release notes before installing and using this product. They may contain requirements or restrictions that are not fully described in this document or updates or corrections to this document.

## Document revision level

| Revision       | Date          | Description                             |
|----------------|---------------|---|
| MK-92RD8011-00 | April 2014    | Initial release.                        |
| MK-92RD8011-01 | August 2014   | Supersedes and replaces MK-92RD8011-00. |
| MK-92RD8011-02 | October 2014  | Supersedes and replaces MK-92RD8011-01. |
| MK-92RD8011-03 | February 2015 | Supersedes and replaces MK-92RD8011-02. |
| MK-92RD8011-04 | May 2015      | Supersedes and replaces MK-92RD8011-03. |
| MK-92RD8011-05 | August 2015   | Supersedes and replaces MK-92RD8011-04. |

| Revision       | Date          | Description                             |
|----------------|---------------|---|
| MK-92RD8011-06 | November 2015 | Supersedes and replaces MK-92RD8011-05. |

## Changes in this revision

- Combined the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 and Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G200, G400, G600, G800 user guides for Hitachi Thin Image.
- Added support for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F400, F600, F800 storage systems.
- Updated screenshots in several sections.
- Added T10 PI attribute information in several sections.
- Added Data Direct Mapping attribute information in several sections.
- Added volume capacity limit in [Thin Image volume requirements on page 56](#).
- Added requirements in [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator on page 97](#).
- Added error codes in [Command Control Interface SSB2 codes on page 180](#).
- Added mixed encryption, selection object, and volume attribute information in [Thin Image GUI reference on page 189](#).
- Added nondisruptive migration data consistency information in [Thin Image GUI reference on page 189](#).

## Referenced documents

### Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform Gx00 and Fx00 documents

- *Product Overview for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform Gx00 and Fx00 Models*, MK-94HM8013
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G200 Hardware Reference Guide*, MK-94HM8020
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G400, G600 Hardware Reference Guide*, MK-94HM8022
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G800 Hardware Reference Guide*, MK-94HM8026
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F400, F600 Hardware Reference Guide*, MK-94HM8045
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F800 Hardware Reference Guide*, MK-94HM8046
- *Provisioning Guide for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform Gx00 and Fx00 Models*, MK-94HM8014
- *Hitachi SNMP Agent User Guide*, MK-94HM8015

- *System Administrator Guide for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform Gx00 and Fx00 Models*, MK-94HM8016
- *Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide*, MK-94HM8019
- *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*, MK-94HM8021
- *Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide*, MK-94HM8023
- *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*, MK-94HM8024

#### **Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 documents**

- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Product Overview*, MK-92RD8051
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Hardware Guide*, MK-92RD8007
- *Hitachi Compatible FlashCopy/FlashCopy SE User Guide*, MK-92RD8010
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Performance Guide*, MK-92RD8012
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Provisioning Guide for Open Systems*, MK-92RD8014
- *Hitachi SNMP Agent User Guide*, MK-92RD8015
- *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 System Administrator Guide*, MK-92RD8016
- *Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe User Guide*, MK-92RD8018
- *Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide*, MK-92RD8019
- *Hitachi ShadowImage® for Mainframe User Guide*, MK-92RD8020
- *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*, MK-92RD8021
- *Hitachi Universal Replicator for Mainframe User Guide*, MK-92RD8022
- *Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide*, MK-92RD8023
- *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*, MK-92RD8024
- *Global-Active Device User Guide for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G Series*, MK-92RD8072

#### **Hitachi Command Suite documents**

- *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide*, MK-90HC172
- *Command Control Interface Installation and Configuration Guide*, MK-90RD7009

## **Document conventions**

This document uses the following terminology conventions:

| Convention      | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| VSP family      | Refers to all models of the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform family.   |
| VSP Gx00 models | Refers to all of the following storage systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G200</li> <li>• Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G400</li> <li>• Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G600</li> <li>• Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G800</li> </ul> |
| VSP G series    | Refers to all of the following storage systems:  |





| Convention  | Description   |
|---|---|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VSP G1000</li> <li>VSP Gx00 models</li> </ul>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VSP Fx00 models</li> <li>VSP F series</li> </ul> | Refers to all of the following storage systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F400</li> <li>Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F600</li> <li>Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F800</li> </ul> |
| FCSE  | Hitachi Compatible FlashCopy®   |
| FCv2  | Compatible FlashCopy® V2  |
| HDP   | Dynamic Provisioning  |
| SI  | ShadowImage   |
| SIz   | ShadowImage for Mainframe   |
| TC  | TrueCopy  |
| TCz   | TrueCopy for Mainframe  |
| HTI   | Thin Image  |
| UR  | Universal Replicator  |
| URz   | Universal Replicator for Mainframe  |

This document uses the following typographic conventions:

| Convention          | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>Bold</b>         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates text in a window, including window titles, menus, menu options, buttons, fields, and labels. Example:<br/>Click OK.</li> <li>Indicates emphasized words in list items.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Italic</i>       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a document title or emphasized words in text.</li> <li>Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or for output by the system. Example:<br/><code>pairedisplay -g group</code></li> </ul> <p>(For exceptions to this convention for variables, see the entry for angle brackets.)</p> |
| Monospace           | Indicates text that is displayed on screen or entered by the user. Example:<br><code>pairedisplay -g oradb</code>   |
| < > angle brackets  | Indicates variables in the following scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Variables are not clearly separated from the surrounding text or from other variables. Example:<br/><code>Status-&lt;report-name&gt;&lt;file-version&gt;.csv</code></li> <li>Variables in headings.</li> </ul>   |
| [ ] square brackets | Indicates optional values. Example: [ a   b ] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing.   |
| { } braces          | Indicates required or expected values. Example: { a   b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.   |
| vertical bar        | Indicates that you have a choice between two or more options or arguments. Examples:<br>[ a   b ] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing.   |

| Convention | Description   |
|------------|---|
|            | { a   b } indicates that you must choose either a or b. |

This document uses the following icons to draw attention to information:

| Icon  | Label   | Description   |
|---|---------|---|
|  | Note    | Calls attention to important or additional information.   |
|  | Tip     | Provides helpful information, guidelines, or suggestions for performing tasks more effectively. |
|  | Caution | Warns the user of adverse conditions or consequences (for example, disruptive operations).      |
|  | WARNING | Warns the user of severe conditions or consequences (for example, destructive operations).      |

## Conventions for storage capacity values

Physical storage capacity values (for example, disk drive capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

| Physical capacity unit | Value                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 kilobyte (KB)        | 1,000 ( $10^3$ ) bytes      |
| 1 megabyte (MB)        | 1,000 KB or $1,000^2$ bytes |
| 1 gigabyte (GB)        | 1,000 MB or $1,000^3$ bytes |
| 1 terabyte (TB)        | 1,000 GB or $1,000^4$ bytes |
| 1 petabyte (PB)        | 1,000 TB or $1,000^5$ bytes |
| 1 exabyte (EB)         | 1,000 PB or $1,000^6$ bytes |

Logical storage capacity values (for example, logical device capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

| Logical capacity unit | Value  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1 block               | 512 bytes  |
| 1 cylinder            | Mainframe: 870 KB<br>Open-systems:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OPEN-V: 960 KB</li> <li>• Others: 720 KB</li> </ul> |
| 1 KB                  | 1,024 ( $2^{10}$ ) bytes   |

| Logical capacity unit | Value                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 MB                  | 1,024 KB or 1,024 <sup>2</sup> bytes |
| 1 GB                  | 1,024 MB or 1,024 <sup>3</sup> bytes |
| 1 TB                  | 1,024 GB or 1,024 <sup>4</sup> bytes |
| 1 PB                  | 1,024 TB or 1,024 <sup>5</sup> bytes |
| 1 EB                  | 1,024 PB or 1,024 <sup>6</sup> bytes |

## Accessing product documentation

Product user documentation is available on Hitachi Data Systems Support Connect: [https://support.hds.com/en\\_us/documents.html](https://support.hds.com/en_us/documents.html). Check this site for the most current documentation, including important updates that may have been made after the release of the product.

## Getting help

[Hitachi Data Systems Support Connect](https://support.hds.com/en_us/documents.html) is the destination for technical support of products and solutions sold by Hitachi Data Systems. To contact technical support, log on to Hitachi Data Systems Support Connect for contact information: [https://support.hds.com/en\\_us/contact-us.html](https://support.hds.com/en_us/contact-us.html).

[Hitachi Data Systems Community](https://community.hds.com) is a global online community for HDS customers, partners, independent software vendors, employees, and prospects. It is the destination to get answers, discover insights, and make connections. **Join the conversation today!** Go to [community.hds.com](https://community.hds.com), register, and complete your profile.

## Comments

Please send us your comments on this document to [doc.comments@hds.com](mailto:doc.comments@hds.com). Include the document title and number, including the revision level (for example, -07), and refer to specific sections and paragraphs whenever possible. All comments become the property of Hitachi Data Systems Corporation.

**Thank you!**





# Overview of Thin Image

With Hitachi Thin Image (HTI), you can perform cost-effective replication by storing the differential data between primary volumes (P-VOLs) and secondary volumes (S-VOLs) of virtual volumes (V-VOLs).

- ☐ [Thin Image workflow](#)
- ☐ [Components of Thin Image](#)
- ☐ [How Thin Image works](#)
- ☐ [How Thin Image pair status changes](#)
- ☐ [The copy threshold option and host server I/O performance for Thin Image](#)
- ☐ [Sharing Thin Image volumes with other Hitachi software applications](#)
- ☐ [Acronyms and abbreviations for VSP family storage system software applications used in this guide](#)

## Thin Image workflow

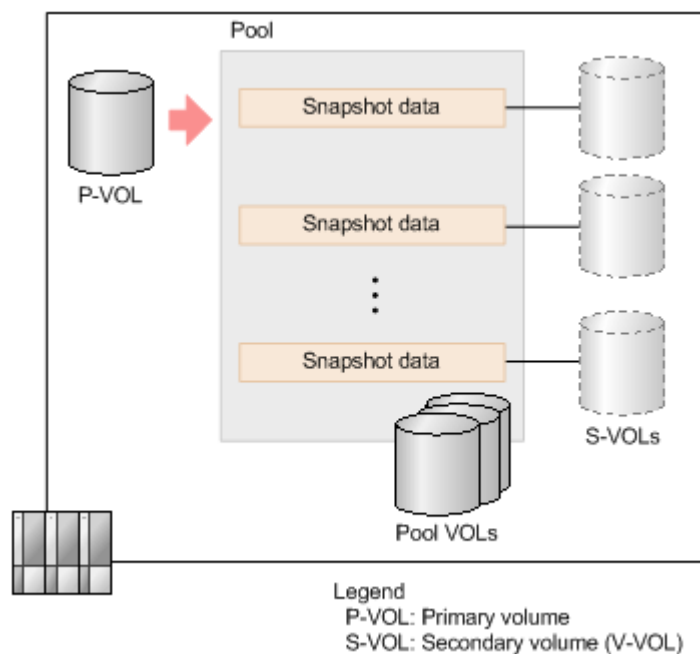
Hitachi Thin Image stores snapshots in a Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform family (VSP family) storage system.

Creating a Thin Image pair changes the status to "PAIR" and stores snapshot data. You can use Thin Image to store a maximum of 1,024 snapshots of data.

Updating the P-VOL first copies the differential data as snapshot data in pool volumes (pool-VOL) then updates the data. Snapshot data is a copy of differential data in Thin Image P-VOLs. If your storage system experiences a data storage failure, you can restore the data using the snapshot data in the pool.

Splitting a Thin Image pair saves a snapshot and stops the copying of replaced data in the pool.

The following figure illustrates the Thin Image workflow.



You can use snapshot data in open-system volumes.

### Related concepts

- [Thin Image pairs](#) on page 20
- [How Thin Image uses V-VOLs](#) on page 24

## Related tasks

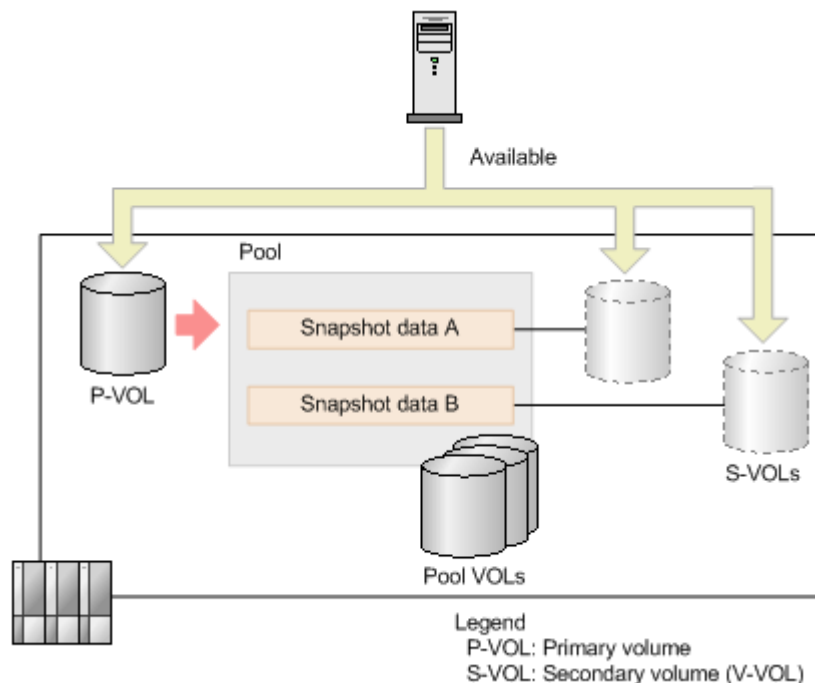
- [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data](#) on page 104

## Workflow for storing Thin Image snapshot data

Snapshot data is data in the pool, which is replaced data. Use this workflow to replace data in the pool.

1. You create a Thin Image pair. The pair is in "PAIR" status.
2. The host updates the primary volume.
3. You split the Thin Image pair. The snapshot data of the primary volume is stored (Snapshot data A in the figure below).
4. The host updates the primary volume again.
5. You split the Thin Image pair. The updated data in the primary volume is stored as snapshot data (Snapshot data B in the figure below). In the event of data corruption, you can recover using this snapshot data.

The following figure illustrates how data in the pool is replaced.



**Note:** The host references the P-VOL, which includes Snapshot data A and Snapshot data B. These snapshots are handled as Thin Image S-VOLs.

## Components of Thin Image

Hitachi Thin Image typically consists of several components, including pairs, groups, and software applications.

Thin Image components:

- Hitachi Thin Image pairs.
- Groups:
  - Consistency groups
  - Snapshot groups
- Software applications for VSP family storage systems:
  - Hitachi Thin Image
  - Dynamic Provisioning (HDP)
  - Command Control Interface (CCI)

You can run CCI commands to perform Thin Image tasks (see [Pair tasks using CCI or Device Manager - Storage Navigator on page 178](#)).

## Thin Image pairs

A Thin Image pair consists of a P-VOL, one or more S-VOLs, and a pool. An S-VOL is only necessary if you want to create a Thin Image pair with an S-VOL specified. Otherwise, a Thin Image pair consists of a P-VOL and a pool.

The P-VOL is an individual logical data volume, or logical device (LDEV). The S-VOL is a V-VOL. LDEVs include V-VOLs of provisioning type HDP. Only a V-VOL created for Thin Image can be specified as an S-VOL. P-VOL differential data is stored as snapshot data in pool-VOLs (LDEVs).



**Note:** To use Thin Image, HDP, and the other VSP family storage system software applications, you must acquire licenses from Hitachi Data Systems.

---

## Consistency and snapshot groups

Consistency groups and snapshot groups are groups of pairs for which you can simultaneously perform pair tasks on all pairs within the group.

A consistency group can include Thin Image (HTI), ShadowImage (SI), and ShadowImage for Mainframe (SIz) pairs. Use consistency groups to split the Thin Image pairs that are defined in the group. Splitting the pairs using the group assures data consistency at the time the VSP family storage system receives the request.

A snapshot group is a group of only Thin Image pairs. Use consistency or snapshot groups to perform Thin Image tasks on all of the pairs within the group. You define Thin Image pairs to a snapshot group when you create the pairs.

The following table shows the differences between consistency groups and snapshot groups.

| Item   | Consistency group | Snapshot group |
|--|-------------------|----------------|
| Pair limit per group                                 | 8,192             | 8,192          |
| Limit  | 2,048             | 2,048          |
| Data consistency                                     | Guaranteed        | Not guaranteed |
| Software application from which you can define pairs | HTI, SI, and SIz  | HTI            |

For more information about defining TC pairs in consistency groups, see the *Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide*.

For more information about defining UR pairs in consistency groups, see the *Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide*.

For more information about defining SI pairs in consistency groups, see the *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*.

### Related concepts

- [Workflow for creating groups and storing snapshot data using CCI](#) on page 25

### Related tasks

- [Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI](#) on page 102
- [Removing Thin Image snapshot groups](#) on page 114

### Related references

- [Thin Image consistency group requirements](#) on page 59
- [Thin Image snapshot group requirements](#) on page 60
- [Pair tasks using CCI or Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 178

## VSP family software applications for Thin Image

A Thin Image installation typically includes the Thin Image software, Dynamic Provisioning software, and CCI.

### Thin Image

Use the Thin Image software on the Device Manager - Storage Navigator (HDvM - SN) computer that is connected to the service processor (SVP) by means of the TCP/IP local area network (LAN).

### Dynamic Provisioning

Use the HDP software on the HDvM - SN computer. A license is required to use HDP.

Since Thin Image uses a portion of the HDP licensed capacity for its pool capacity, reserve enough HDP licensed capacity to run both HDP and Thin

Image and to accommodate the Thin Image pairs or pools that you will create.

Thin Image and HDP pool-VOLs are also referred to as used volumes. The licensed capacity must exceed the total capacity of used volumes.

## CCI

When you use CCI to define multiple Thin Image pairs in a consistency group, you can only specify one consistency group for a group defined by the configuration definition file for CCI.



**Note:** The configuration definition file for CCI is a group that is not a consistency group.

---

If you create a new pair and define the pairs in a consistency group for a group you defined using the configuration definition file for CCI, and the pair is already defined in a consistency group, the pair is defined in the same consistency group even if you try to create a new pair and assign it to a different consistency group.

### Related tasks

- [Installing Thin Image](#) on page 54
- [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data using CCI](#) on page 105

### Related references

- [Thin Image licensed capacity requirements](#) on page 54

## How Thin Image works

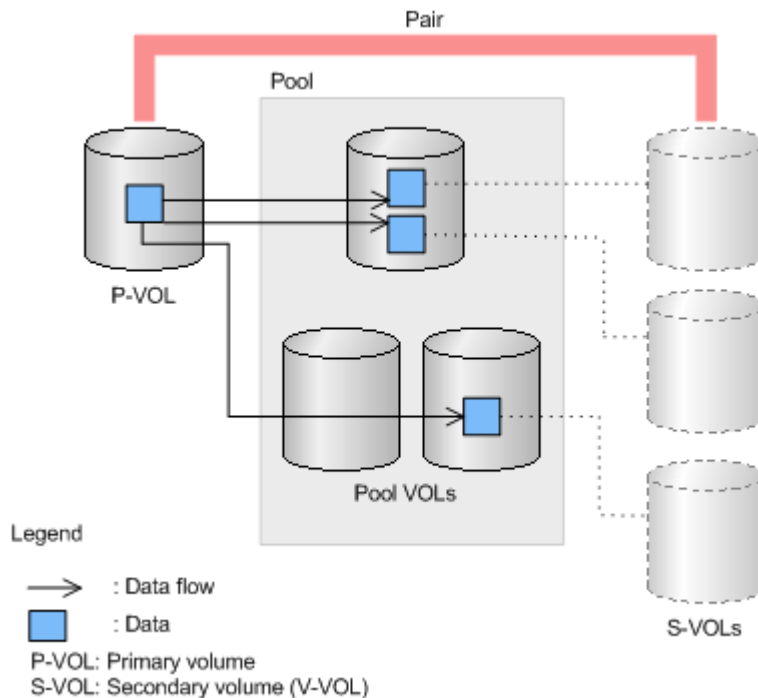
This topic explains how Thin Image works.

### How Thin Image uses pools and pool volumes

Thin Image stores snapshot data in pools. A pool consists of multiple pool volumes (pool-VOLs) which are, as a group, the container for the snapshot data.

You must create pools to use Thin Image. You can create pools and add and delete pool-VOLs from them using Thin Image.

The following figure illustrates the relationship between a Thin Image pair and a pool.



**Caution:** When creating pools, calculate the pool capacity and reserve a sufficient amount of pool capacity. When you write data to Thin Image pair volumes and the amount of pool usage exceeds the pool capacity, the Thin Image pair is suspended ("PSUE" status), snapshot data is not stored, and you cannot create additional Thin Image pairs.

#### Related tasks

- [Thin Image data pool requirements](#) on page 58
- [Calculating and assigning pool capacity](#) on page 63
- [Creating Thin Image data pools](#) on page 69
- [Increasing pool capacity](#) on page 142
- [Decreasing pool capacity](#) on page 147
- [Deleting pools](#) on page 159
- [Restoring suspended Thin Image pairs](#) on page 110

## Usage level rebalancing among parity groups

If multiple parity groups that contain LDEVs used as pool-VOLs exist, rebalancing can improve biased usage rates in parity groups.

Rebalancing is performed as if each parity group were a single pool-VOL. After rebalancing, the usage rates of LDEVs in a parity group may not be balanced, but the usage rate in the entire pool is balanced.

The usage level among parity groups is automatically rebalanced when expanding or shrinking pool capacity operations are in progress.

If you expand the pool capacity, Dynamic Provisioning moves data to the added space on a per-page basis. When the data is moved, the usage rate among parity groups of the pool-VOLs is rebalanced.

Host I/O performance may decrease when data is moved. If you do not want to have the usage level of parity groups automatically balanced, call Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

You can see the rebalancing progress of the usage level among parity groups in the **View Pool Management Status** window. Dynamic Provisioning automatically stops balancing the usage levels among parity groups if the cache memory is not redundant or the pool usage rate reaches up to the threshold.

#### **Related tasks**

- [Viewing formatted pool capacity and pool usage rates](#) on page 142

## **How Thin Image uses V-VOLs**

V-VOLs are virtual volumes that do not have any physical storage space. Thin Image uses V-VOLs to access snapshot data from hosts, so if you are using a storage system that does this, V-VOLs are required to assign an S-VOL to snapshot data. If the storage system does not need to access snapshot data from hosts, V-VOLs are not necessary.

You can release the V-VOLs that are being used as Thin Image S-VOLs from assignment of snapshot data. Released V-VOLs can be assigned to other snapshot data.

You cannot release definitions of V-VOLs if the V-VOLs are being used as Thin Image secondary volumes; you must first release the Thin Image pairs that are using the V-VOLs.

## **How Thin Image pairs are created**

You can create a Thin Image pair with or without an S-VOL specified.

- Without an S-VOL specified:  
If hosts do not access snapshot data on a regular basis after storing it, you can create a Thin Image pair without specifying an S-VOL.
- With an S-VOL specified:  
If hosts do access snapshot data on a regular basis after storing it, you must specify an S-VOL when you create a Thin Image pair.  
Thin Image pairs use V-VOLs as secondary volumes. V-VOLs must be defined before Thin Image pairs are created. Up to 1,024 secondary volumes can be specified for one primary volume.

When creating a Thin Image pair, you need to specify the pool to be used for the pair. If multiple Thin Image pairs share the same primary volume, the



pairs must also share the same pool. For example, if you specify three secondary volumes for one primary volume, you must specify the same pool for the three Thin Image pairs.

If you release a Thin Image pair, the volume status becomes SMPL. Immediately after a volume becomes SMPL, you cannot use the volume to create a Thin Image pair. If you want to create Thin Image pairs using SMPL volumes, you should wait for a while before creating the pairs. The wait time required depends on your system environment.

#### **Related tasks**

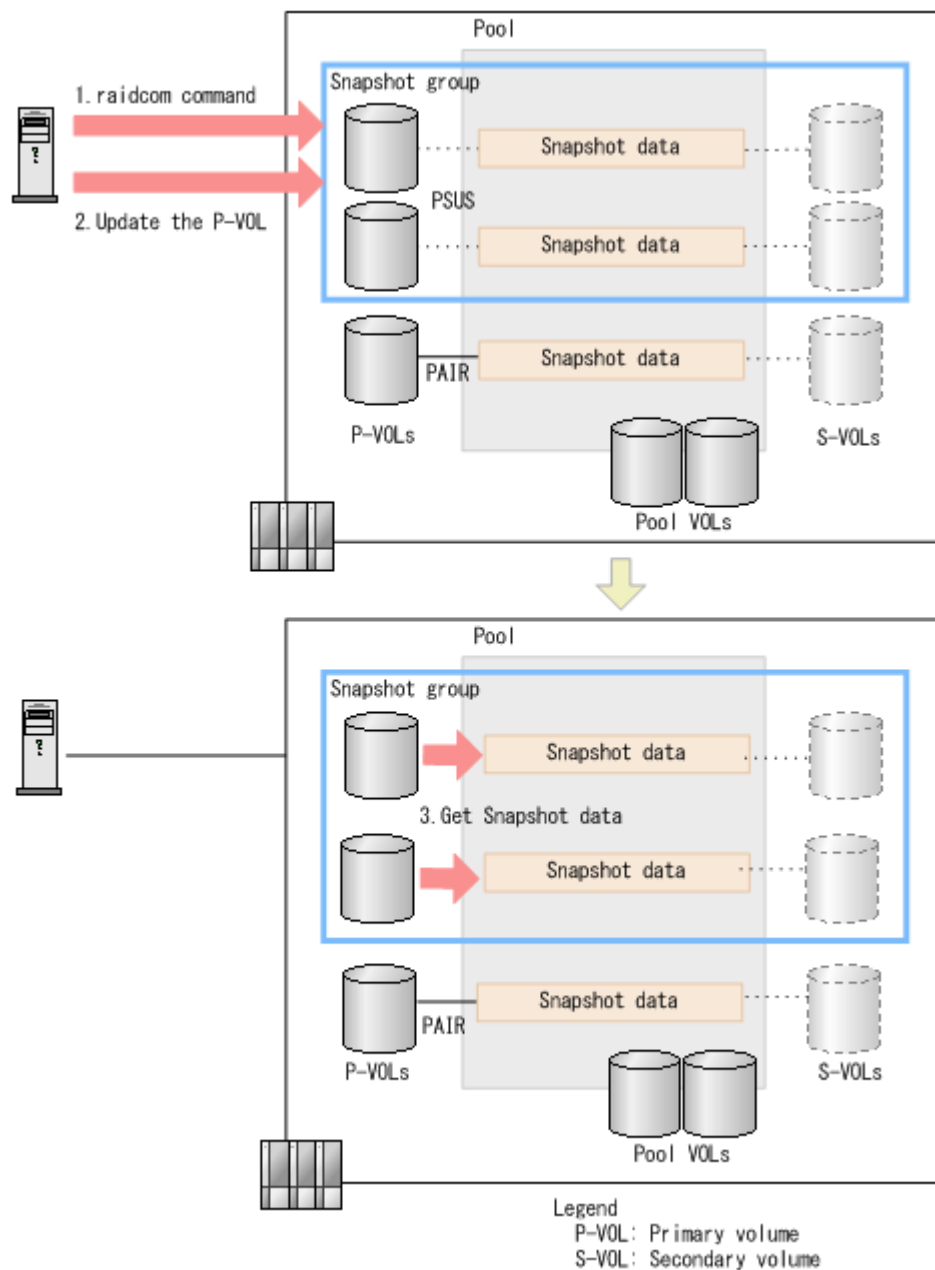
- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97
- [Viewing pair properties](#) on page 127

### **Workflow for creating groups and storing snapshot data using CCI**

You can use CCI raidcom commands to create a consistency or snapshot group and to split pairs to store the snapshot data for the group.

With Thin Image, ShadowImage, and ShadowImage for Mainframe, you can create up to 2,048 consistency groups in a VSP family storage system.

The following figure illustrates how snapshot data is stored for a consistency or snapshot group using CCI raidcom commands.



Use the following workflow to create a snapshot group and store volume snapshot data in the group:

1. Split the pair and store snapshot data for a group. To do this using CCI, run the following raidcom command:  
**raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot\_data create**
2. The host issues a write request to each P-VOL in the group. Snapshot data for the volumes are stored.

A CCI command is used to store snapshot data for a consistency group or a snapshot group. Device Manager - Storage Navigator can only be used to reference consistency groups and snapshot groups.

#### **Related concepts**

- [Consistency and snapshot groups](#) on page 20

#### **Related tasks**

- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97
- [Removing Thin Image snapshot groups](#) on page 114

#### **Related references**

- [Pair tasks using CCI or Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 178

## **Methods of storing snapshot data**

The Copy-After-Write (CAW) method is the default method of storing snapshot data. When the write pending rate in cache memory is 60% or higher, the Copy-On-Write (COW) method is used.

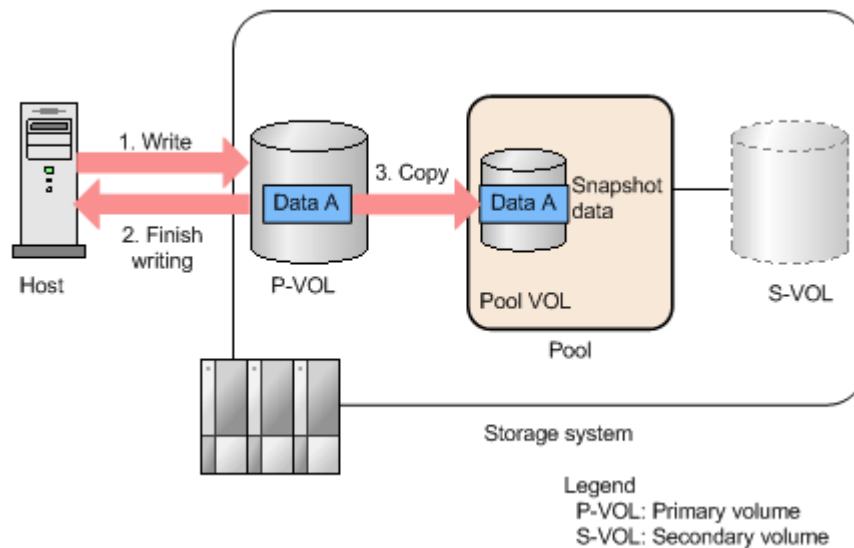
In the CAW method, writing the P-VOL snapshot data changes the status to "write completion". In the COW method, storing the P-VOL snapshot data changes the status to "write completion". The CAW method wait time is shorter than that of the COW method.

#### **Workflow for the CAW method**

The following workflow describes the CAW method and how a VSP family storage system stores snapshot data:

- 1.** The host writes data to a P-VOL.
- 2.** The storage system returns the write completion status to the host.
- 3.** The storage system stores snapshot data for the P-VOL in the background.

The following figure illustrates the CAW method.

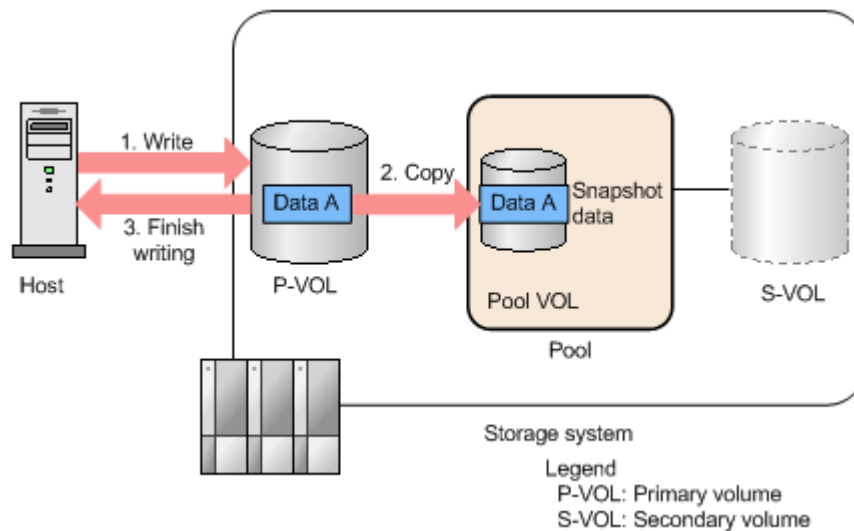


### Workflow for the COW method

The following workflow describes the COW method and how a VSP family storage system stores snapshot data:

1. The host writes data to a P-VOL.
2. The storage system stores snapshot data for the P-VOL.
3. The storage system returns the write completion status to the host.

The following figure illustrates the COW method.



## Thin Image pair restoration

You can use Thin Image to overwrite snapshot data in pools to P-VOLs so that the P-VOL content is returned to the condition it was when you stored snapshot data.

Overwriting snapshot data to P-VOLs is also referred to as restoring Thin Image pairs.

If data is written to a secondary volume, this particular data (not snapshot data) is overwritten to the primary volume when the Thin Image pair is restored.

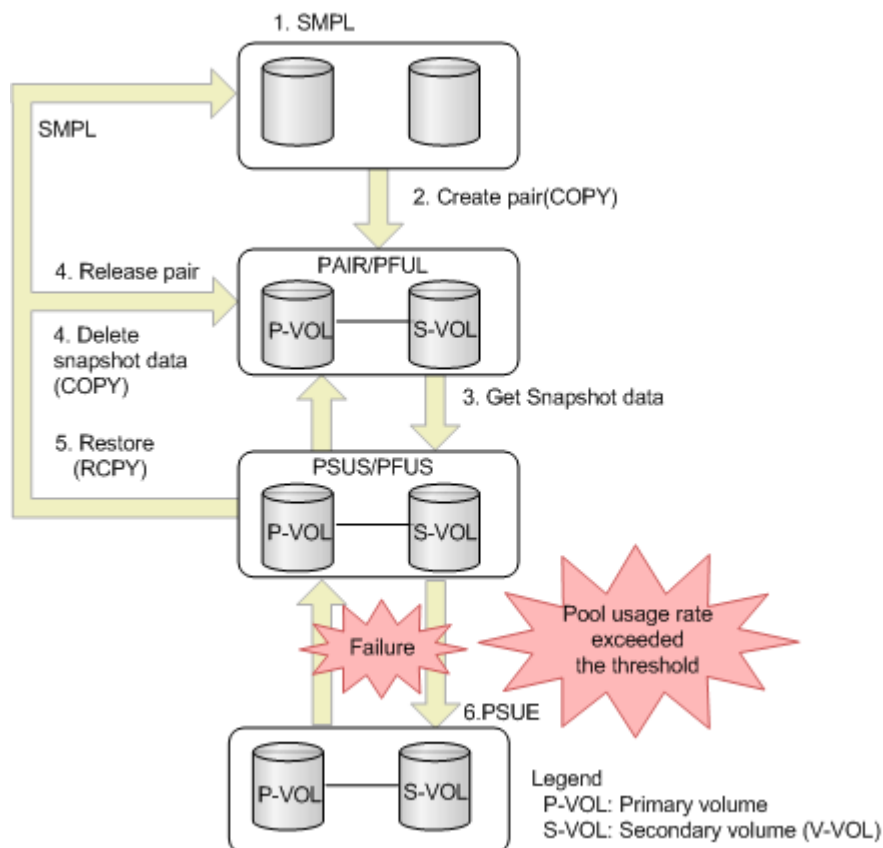
### Related tasks

- [Restoring Thin Image pairs](#) on page 108

## How Thin Image pair status changes

The Thin Image pair status changes as you create, split, or perform other pair tasks.

The following figure illustrates the pair status changes.



The following workflow describes the Thin Image pair status changes:

1. You choose two volumes that are in SMPL status and are not in use as a Thin Image pair.
2. You create a pair. If the primary volume has not previously been paired with any secondary volume, the pair status changes to "COPY" at first, and then to "PAIR" after the pair creation finishes.
  - Creation of a Thin Image pair may be time consuming if you create a pair immediately after deleting the last snapshot data for the primary volume.
  - If the pool threshold is exceeded when the Thin Image pair is in "PAIR" status, the pair status changes to "PFUL."
  - Thin Image pairs cannot be created when the pool threshold is exceeded.
3. Snapshot data is stored when you split a pair in "PAIR" status. After snapshot data is stored, the pair status is "PSUS." If the pool threshold is exceeded when the Thin Image pair is in "PSUS" status, the pair status changes to "PFUS."
4. If you only want to delete snapshot data but do not want to release the Thin Image pair, you delete the snapshot data for the pair in "PSUS" or "PFUS" status.
5. If you restore a Thin Image pair in "PSUS" status, snapshot data is overwritten to the primary volume. The pair status is "RCPY" when the restore process is in progress. The pair status is "PAIR" after the restore process finishes.
6. The pool can only contain data of predetermined capacity. If the total capacity of snapshot data in the pool exceeds the pool capacity, the status of the Thin Image pair becomes "PSUE." In addition, the pair status changes to "PSUE" if a failure occurs during the restore process or if the pool usage rate reaches 100 percent. Even if the restore process is not in progress, the pair status may change to "PSUE" when a failure occurs.

## Thin Image host access and pair status

The status of Thin Image (HTI) pairs depends on whether the hosts can read from or write to the Thin Image pair P-VOL or S-VOLs.

The following table explains the host access and pair status.

| HTI pair status | P-VOL |       | S-VOL |       |
|-----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|                 | Read  | Write | Read  | Write |
| SMPL            | Yes   | Yes   | No    | No    |
| SMPL(PD)        | Yes   | Yes   | No    | No    |
| COPY            | Yes   | Yes   | No    | No    |

| HTI pair status  | P-VOL |       | S-VOL |       |
|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|  | Read  | Write | Read  | Write |
| PAIR/PFUL  | Yes   | Yes   | No    | No    |
| PSUS/PFUS  | Yes   | Yes   | Yes   | Yes   |
| RCPY   | Yes   | Yes   | No    | No    |
| PSUE   | Yes   | Yes   | No    | No    |
| Legend<br>Yes: Hosts can access the volume<br>No: Hosts cannot access the volume |       |       |       |       |



**Caution:** If a host uses a software application to monitor Thin Image pair volumes other than Thin Image, the S-VOL status determines if the software application ends abnormally. For example, if the S-VOLs are in a status other than "PSUS" and "PFUS," the host can reject access.

If a host connects to at least two ports, an abnormality can occur with ports that are not connected to S-VOLs rejecting access from hosts. To resolve these issues, close the software application that monitors volumes.

## The copy threshold option and host server I/O performance for Thin Image

You can enable the copy threshold option to help minimize the decline of host server I/O performance by lowering the workload on the storage system.

I/O performance of the host server might be lowered as the workload on the storage system increases. If you perform Thin Image restore operations when the workload on the storage system is high, I/O performance of the host server is more likely to be lowered because replication processes for the primary volumes are triggered. The copy threshold option can be used to temporarily stop the replication processes triggered by the restore operations when the workload on the storage system is high. The copy threshold option can contribute to minimizing the decline in I/O performance of the host server.

The copy threshold option is applicable only when the workload on the storage system is excessively heavy. If the copy threshold option is applied, all the replication processes triggered by restore operations are stopped.

Replication processes stopped by the copy threshold option will be restarted as the workload on the storage system is lowered. Enabling the copy threshold option stops replication processes for Thin Image and the following products when the storage system is overloaded.

- ShadowImage

- ShadowImage for Mainframe
- Compatible FlashCopy® V2
- Volume Migration V2

For more information about enabling the copy threshold option, call Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

For more information about Compatible FlashCopy® V2, see the *Hitachi Compatible FlashCopy/FlashCopy SE User Guide*.

#### Related concepts

- [Thin Image pair restoration](#) on page 29

## Sharing Thin Image volumes with other Hitachi software applications

You can create Thin Image (HTI) pairs using pair volumes for other Hitachi replication software applications, such as ShadowImage and TrueCopy. You can also create Thin Image pairs using volumes to which you define attributes using Data Retention Utility or CCI.

You can share Thin Image volumes with the following Hitachi software application volumes:

- Data Retention Utility
- Volume Migration V2
- ShadowImage (SI)
- TrueCopy (TC)
- Universal Replicator (UR)
- Global-active device (GAD)

The following table shows when you can share Thin Image pair volumes with other software application volumes. If a volume that you share with a Thin Image volume is shown in the table, the pair status determines whether you can perform tasks. If the S-VOL is not assigned to snapshot data, you cannot share Thin Image volumes with other software applications, because the S-VOL does not exist.

| Software application volume type | Used as an HTI P-VOL | Used as an HTI S-VOL |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| SI P-VOL                         | Yes <sup>3</sup>     | No                   |
| SI S-VOL                         | Yes                  | No                   |
| TC P-VOL                         | Yes                  | No                   |
| TC S-VOL                         | Yes                  | No                   |
| UR P-VOL                         | Yes                  | No                   |
| UR S-VOL                         | Yes                  | No                   |
| UR journal volume                | No                   | No                   |



| Software application volume type   | Used as an HTI P-VOL | Used as an HTI S-VOL |
|--|----------------------|----------------------|
| GAD P-VOL  | Yes                  | No                   |
| GAD S-VOL  | Yes                  | No                   |
| GAD volume with reservation attribute  | No                   | No                   |
| GAD volume for quorum disk   | No                   | No                   |
| Volume Migration source volume   | No                   | No                   |
| Volume Migration target volume   | No                   | No                   |
| Read Only volume <sup>1, 4, 6</sup>  | Yes                  | Yes                  |
| Protect volume <sup>1, 4, 6</sup>  | Yes                  | Yes                  |
| S-VOL Disable volume <sup>4, 6</sup>   | Yes                  | No                   |
| Zero Read Capacity volume <sup>2, 5, 6</sup>   | Yes                  | Yes                  |
| Invisible volume <sup>2, 5, 6</sup>  | Yes                  | Yes                  |
| DP-VOL   | Yes                  | No                   |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If you use HDvM - SN to share the volume with other software applications, the pair status determines whether you can share the volume.</li> <li>2. To share the volume with other software applications, you must use CCI.</li> <li>3. You cannot Quick Restore.</li> <li>4. Use the Data Retention Utility to set this attribute.</li> <li>5. Use CCI to set this attribute.</li> <li>6. Use the Data Retention Utility to confirm whether this attribute is set to volume.</li> </ol> <p>Legend:</p> <p>Yes: You can share the volume.<br/>No: You cannot share the volume.</p> |                      |                      |

## Sharing Thin Image volumes that have Data Retention Utility access attributes

You can create Thin Image (HTI) pairs using volumes on which you set Data Retention Utility access attributes.

Depending on access attributes, you cannot perform some pair tasks and pool tasks with Thin Image. The Thin Image pair tasks you can perform are different depending on whether you assign Data Retention Utility access attributes using CCI or HDvM - SN. The tables below explain whether you can perform Thin Image pair tasks and pool tasks on volumes that have access attributes assigned by Data Retention Utility. If you release assignment of snapshot data after assigning access attributes to a Thin Image S-VOL, the Thin Image tasks you can perform are the same as those that can be performed when the Read/Write attribute is assigned to the S-VOL.

Also, you can assign access attributes to Thin Image P-VOL and S-VOLs. The tables below also explain Thin Image pair tasks and pool tasks after access attributes are assigned.

## Access attributes and supported Thin Image pair tasks

The following table lists the relationship between P-VOL and S-VOL access attributes and Thin Image pair tasks when using HDvM - SN to assign Data Retention Utility access attributes.

| Volume access attributes specified for the HTI pair   |                                   | HTI pair task                                     |                                    |        |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--------|
| P-VOL   | S-VOL                             | Create, split, suspend, Resync pair (Normal Copy) | Resync (Reverse Copy) <sup>1</sup> | Delete |
| Read/Write  | Read/Write                        | Yes   |                                    |        |
|   | Read Only, Protect, S-VOL Disable | No  |                                    |        |
| Read Only, Protect, S-VOL Disable   | Read/Write                        | Yes   | No                                 | Yes    |
|   | Read Only, Protect, S-VOL Disable | No  |                                    |        |
| <b>1.</b> Reverse Copy does not copy S-VOL access attributes to P-VOLs (see <a href="#">Pair resynchronization methods on page 111</a> ). |                                   |   |                                    |        |

The following table lists the relationship between P-VOL and S-VOL access attributes and Thin Image pair tasks when using CCI to assign Data Retention Utility access attributes.

| Volume access attributes specified for the HTI pair  |                                | HTI pair task                                     |                                    |        |
|--|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--------|
| P-VOL  | S-VOL                          | Create, split, suspend, Resync pair (Normal Copy) | Resync (Reverse Copy) <sup>1</sup> | Delete |
| Read/Write, Read Only, Protect   | Read/Write, Read Only, Protect | Yes   |                                    |        |
|  | S-VOL Disable                  | No  |                                    |        |
| S-VOL Disable  | Read/Write, Read Only, Protect | Yes   | No                                 | Yes    |
|  | S-VOL Disable                  | No  |                                    |        |
| 1. Reverse Copy does not copy S-VOL access attributes to P-VOLs (see <a href="#">Pair resynchronization methods on page 111</a> ). |                                |   |                                    |        |

## Access attributes and supported Thin Image pool tasks

The following table lists the relationship between P-VOL and S-VOL access attributes specified by Thin Image and Thin Image pool tasks when using CCI or HDvM - SN to assign Data Retention Utility access attributes.

| Volume access attributes specified by HTI | HTI pool task    |
|---|------------------|
|   | Pool-VOL setting |
| Read/Write                                | Yes              |
| Read Only                                 | No               |
| Protect                                   | No               |
| S-VOL Disable                             | No               |
| Legend:                                   |                  |
| Yes: You can perform the task.            |                  |
| No: You cannot perform the task.          |                  |



**Note:** Performing a Thin Image task does not change the volume access attributes.

### Required Thin Image pair status when using Data Retention Utility to assign access attributes to some volumes

The following table shows the Thin Image pair status that is required to use Data Retention Utility to assign access attributes to some Thin Image P-VOLs and S-VOLs when also using HDvM - SN to assign Data Retention Utility access attributes.

| HTI volume                          |        | Access attribute to be assigned |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Pair status                         | Volume | Read/Write                      | Read Only<br>Protect<br>S-VOL Disable |
| COPY                                | P-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
|                                     | S-VOL  | Yes                             | No                                    |
| PAIR, PFUL                          | P-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
|                                     | S-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
| PSUS, PFUS                          | P-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
|                                     | S-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
| SMPL(PD)                            | P-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
|                                     | S-VOL  | Yes                             | No                                    |
| RCPY                                | P-VOL  | Yes                             | No                                    |
|                                     | S-VOL  | Yes                             | No                                    |
| PSUE                                | P-VOL  | Yes                             | Yes                                   |
|                                     | S-VOL  | Yes                             | No                                    |
| Legend:                             |        |                                 |                                       |
| Yes: You can perform the setting    |        |                                 |                                       |
| No: You cannot perform the setting. |        |                                 |                                       |

The following table shows the Thin Image pair status that is required to use Data Retention Utility to assign access attributes to some Thin Image P-VOLs and S-VOLs when also using CCI to assign Data Retention Utility access attributes.

| HTI volume   |        | Access attribute to be assigned    |               |
|--|--------|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Pair status  | Volume | Read/Write<br>Read Only<br>Protect | S-VOL Disable |
| COPY   | P-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
|  | S-VOL  | Yes                                | No            |
| PAIR, PFUL   | P-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
|  | S-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
| PSUS, PFUS   | P-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
|  | S-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
| SMPL(PD)   | P-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
|  | S-VOL  | Yes                                | No            |
| RCPY   | P-VOL  | Yes                                | No            |
|  | S-VOL  | Yes                                | No            |
| PSUE   | P-VOL  | Yes                                | Yes           |
|  | S-VOL  | Yes                                | No            |
| Legend:<br>Yes: You can perform the setting<br>No: You cannot perform the setting. |        |                                    |               |

## Sharing Thin Image volumes with Hitachi Volume Migration

You cannot do the following:

- Perform Thin Image tasks on volumes reserved for Volume Migration without regard to the migration plan status.
- Use Thin Image pair volumes or pool-VOLs as volumes reserved for Volume Migration V2.

For more information about the migration plan status and Volume Migration tasks, see the *Hitachi Volume Migration User Guide*.

## Sharing Thin Image volumes with ShadowImage

You can share Thin Image (HTI) P-VOLs with ShadowImage (SI) P-VOL and S-VOLs.

### Available Thin Image tasks

The following table lists the Thin Image tasks you can perform when sharing a Thin Image P-VOL with a ShadowImage P-VOL.

| HTI task  | SI pair status     |      |                    |                    |      |                    |                      |      |
|---|--------------------|------|--------------------|--------------------|------|--------------------|----------------------|------|
|   | COPY(P D)/<br>COPY | PAIR | COPY(S P)/<br>COPY | PSUS(S P)/<br>PSUS | PSUS | COPY(R S)/<br>COPY | COPY(R S-R)/<br>RCPY | PSUE |
| Create pair   | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | No                   | Yes  |
| Store snapshot data   | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | No                   | Yes  |
| Restore pair  | No                 | No   | No                 | No                 | Yes  | No                 | No                   | Yes  |
| Delete snapshot data  | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes  |
| Release pair  | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes  |
| Legend:<br>Yes: You can perform the task.<br>No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |                    |      |                    |                    |      |                    |                      |      |

The following table lists the Thin Image tasks you can perform when sharing a Thin Image P-VOL with a ShadowImage S-VOL.

| HTI task   | SI pair status     |      |                    |                    |      |                    |                      |      |
|--|--------------------|------|--------------------|--------------------|------|--------------------|----------------------|------|
|  | COPY(P D)/<br>COPY | PAIR | COPY(S P)/<br>COPY | PSUS(S P)/<br>PSUS | PSUS | COPY(R S)/<br>COPY | COPY(R S-R)/<br>RCPY | PSUE |
| Create pair  | No                 | No   | No                 | No                 | Yes  | No                 | No                   | No   |
| Store snapshot data  | N/A                | No   | No                 | No                 | Yes  | No                 | No                   | No   |
| Store snapshot data for a consistency group  | N/A                | No   | No                 | No                 | Yes* | No                 | No                   | No   |
| Restore pair   | N/A                | No   | No                 | No                 | Yes  | No                 | No                   | No   |
| Delete snapshot data   | N/A                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes  |
| Release pair   | N/A                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                | Yes  | Yes                | Yes                  | Yes  |
| * The SI pair status must be "PSUS" during the period between when you create the HTI pair to store snapshot data and when HTI starts to store snapshot data for a consistency group, and when all of the pairs in the consistency group are split ("PSUS" status). If the SI pair status changes to a status other than "PSUS" while HTI is storing snapshot data for the consistency group, the snapshot data consistency cannot be guaranteed.<br><br>Legend:<br>Yes: You can perform the task.<br>No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected).<br>N/A: Not applicable. |                    |      |                    |                    |      |                    |                      |      |

### Available ShadowImage tasks

The following table lists the ShadowImage tasks you can perform when sharing a Thin Image P-VOL with a ShadowImage P-VOL.

| SI task  | HTI pair status |            |            |          |      |      |
|--|-----------------|------------|------------|----------|------|------|
|  | COPY            | PAIR, PFUL | PSUS, PFUS | SMPL(PD) | RCPY | PSUE |
| Create pair  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Create and split pair                                      | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Split pair   | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Normal Copy  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Reverse Copy   | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Quick Restore  | No              | No         | No         | No       | No   | No   |
| Suspend replication  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | Yes  | Yes  |
| Delete pair  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | Yes  | Yes  |
| Legend:  |                 |            |            |          |      |      |
| Yes: You can perform the task.                             |                 |            |            |          |      |      |
| No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |                 |            |            |          |      |      |

The following table lists the ShadowImage tasks you can perform when sharing a Thin Image P-VOL with a ShadowImage S-VOL.

| SI task  | HTI pair status |            |            |          |      |      |
|--|-----------------|------------|------------|----------|------|------|
|  | COPY            | PAIR, PFUL | PSUS, PFUS | SMPL(PD) | RCPY | PSUE |
| Create pair  | No              | No         | No         | No       | No   | No   |
| Create and split pair                                      | No              | No         | No         | No       | No   | No   |
| Split pair   | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Normal Copy  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Reverse Copy   | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Quick Restore  | No              | No         | No         | No       | No   | No   |
| Suspend replication  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | No   | Yes  |
| Delete pair  | Yes             | Yes        | Yes        | Yes      | Yes  | Yes  |
| Legend:  |                 |            |            |          |      |      |
| Yes: You can perform the task.                             |                 |            |            |          |      |      |
| No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |                 |            |            |          |      |      |

You can perform ShadowImage pair tasks after you store snapshot data, but the consistency of the stored snapshot data is not guaranteed.

Thin Image S-VOLs use the data in the P-VOL. You cannot Quick Restore in ShadowImage.

For more information about ShadowImage tasks and pair statuses, see the *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*.



**Caution:** Thin Image uses MU numbers 0 to 1,023, and they are assigned in the order of 3 to 1,023, followed by 0 to 2. ShadowImage uses MU numbers 0 to 2. Thin Image cannot use the MU numbers 0 to 2 if you want to share Thin Image volumes with ShadowImage.

To share Thin Image volumes with ShadowImage if Thin Image is using the MU numbers 0 to 2:

1. Delete the Thin Image pair of the MU number 0 to 2.
2. Create the ShadowImage pairs and Thin Image pairs.

## Sharing Thin Image volumes with TrueCopy and Universal Replicator

You can share Thin Image (HTI) P-VOLs with TrueCopy (TC) and Universal Replicator (UR) pair volumes.

The following tables list the relationship between pair tasks and status.

The following table lists the Thin Image tasks you can perform when the P-VOL is shared with a TrueCopy or Universal Replicator P-VOL.

| HTI task  | TC/UR status |      |      |      |            |          |
|---|--------------|------|------|------|------------|----------|
|   | COPY         | PAIR | PSUS | PSUE | Suspending | Deleting |
| Create pair   | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Store snapshot data   | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Restore pair  | No           | No   | Yes  | Yes  | No         | No       |
| Delete snapshot data  | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Delete pair   | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Legend:<br>Yes: You can perform the task.<br>No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |              |      |      |      |            |          |

The following table lists the Thin Image tasks you can perform when the P-VOL is shared with a TrueCopy or Universal Replicator S-VOL.

| HTI task  | TC/UR status |      |      |      |      |            |          |
|---|--------------|------|------|------|------|------------|----------|
|   | COPY         | PAIR | PSUS | PSUE | SSWS | Suspending | Deleting |
| Create pair   | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Store snapshot data   | No           | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Restore pair*   | No           | No   | No   | No   | No   | No         | No       |
| Delete snapshot data  | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| Delete pair   | Yes          | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes  | Yes        | Yes      |
| *When restoring an HTI pair and you are using the P-VOL as a TC or UR S-VOL, switch tasks to the remote storage system using the <code>horctakeover</code> command. |              |      |      |      |      |            |          |
| Legend:   |              |      |      |      |      |            |          |

| HTI task   | TC/UR status |      |      |      |      |            |          |
|--|--------------|------|------|------|------|------------|----------|
|  | COPY         | PAIR | PSUS | PSUE | SSWS | Suspending | Deleting |
| Yes: You can perform the task.<br>No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |              |      |      |      |      |            |          |

The following table lists the TrueCopy/Universal Replicator tasks you can perform when the Thin Image P-VOL is shared with a TrueCopy or Universal Replicator P-VOL.

| TC/UR task   | HTI status |            |            |      |      |
|--|------------|------------|------------|------|------|
|  | COPY       | PAIR, PFUL | PSUS, PFUS | RCPY | PSUE |
| Create pair  | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | No   | Yes  |
| Split pair   | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | N/A  | Yes  |
| Resynchronize pair   | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | No   | Yes  |
| Delete pair  | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | Yes  | Yes  |
| Switch to remote storage   | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | No   | Yes  |
| Legend:<br>Yes: You can perform the task.<br>No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected).<br>N/A: Not applicable |            |            |            |      |      |

The following table lists the TrueCopy/Universal Replicator tasks you can perform when the Thin Image P-VOL is shared with a TrueCopy or Universal Replicator S-VOL.

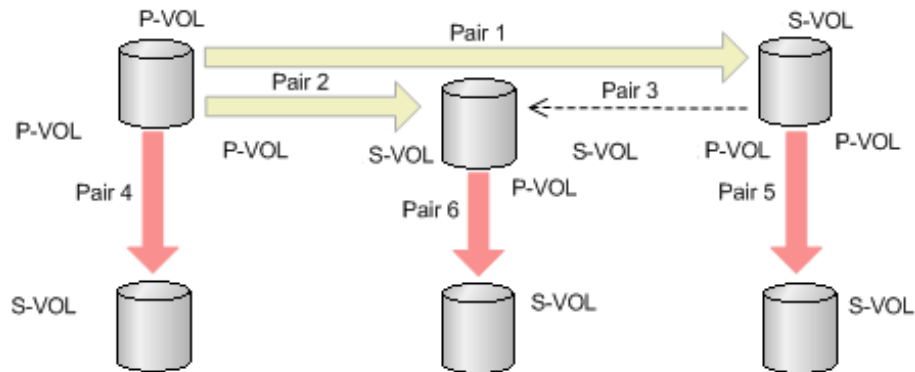
| TC/UR task  | HTI status |            |            |      |      |
|---|------------|------------|------------|------|------|
|   | COPY       | PAIR, PFUL | PSUS, PFUS | RCPY | PSUE |
| Create pair   | No         | No         | No         | No   | No   |
| Split pair  | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | N/A  | Yes  |
| Resynchronize pair  | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | N/A  | Yes  |
| Delete pair   | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | N/A  | Yes  |
| Switch to remote storage  | Yes        | Yes        | Yes        | N/A  | Yes  |
| *Use a TC/UR S-VOL as an HTI P-VOL.<br>Legend:<br>Yes: You can perform the task.<br>No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected).<br>N/A: Not applicable |            |            |            |      |      |

## Volume backup with Thin Image, TrueCopy, and Universal Replicator in a 3DC multitarget configuration workflow

You can use Thin Image to back up TrueCopy and Universal Replicator volumes on the remote sites in a 3DC multitarget configuration.



The following figure shows how to back up the volumes.



- Pair 1 is a TrueCopy pair.
- Pair 2 is a Universal Replicator pair.
- Pair 3 is a Universal Replicator pair for delta resync.
- Pairs 4, 5, and 6 are Thin Image pairs.

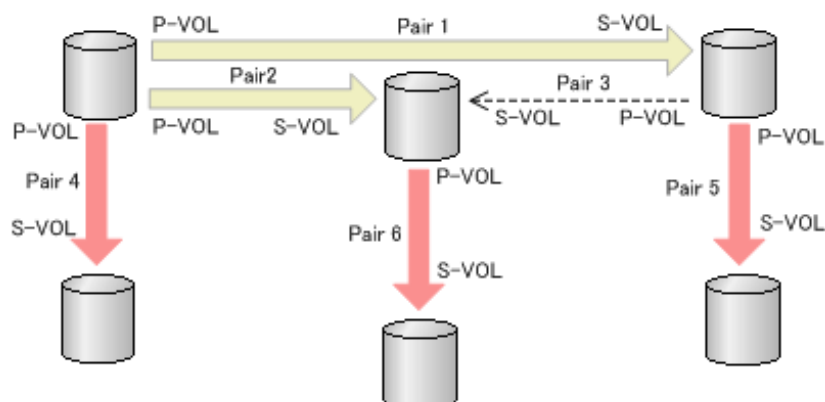
You must create 3DC multitarget and delta resync pairs (pairs 1, 2, and 3) before creating pairs 5 and 6, but pair 4 can be created at any time.

(VSP G200, G400, G600, G800 only) You cannot share 3DC volumes that use two mirrors with Thin Image.

### Volume backup with Thin Image and Universal Replicator in a 3DC multitarget configuration workflow (VSP G1000 only)

You can use Thin Image to back up Universal Replicator volumes on the remote sites in a 3DC multitarget configuration.

The following figure shows how to back up the volumes.



- Pairs 1 and 2 are Universal Replicator pairs.
- Pair 3 is a Universal Replicator pair for delta resync.

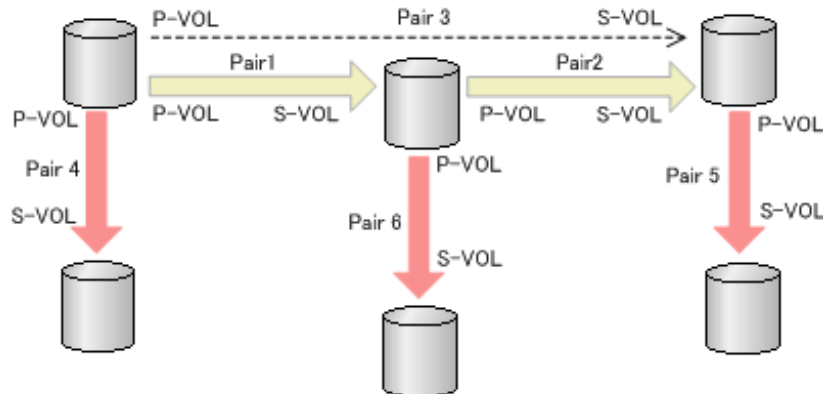
- Pairs 4, 5, and 6 are Thin Image pairs.

You must create pairs 1 and 2 before creating pairs 5 and 6, but pair 4 can be created at any time.

### Volume backup with Thin Image and Universal Replicator in a 3DC cascade configuration workflow (VSP G1000 only)

You can use Thin Image to back up Universal Replicator volumes on the remote sites in a 3DC cascade configuration.

The following figure shows how to back up the volumes.



- Pairs 1 and 2 are Universal Replicator pairs.
- Pair 3 is a Universal Replicator pair for delta resync.
- Pairs 4, 5, and 6 are Thin Image pairs.

You must create pairs 1 and 2 before creating pairs 5 and 6, but pair 4 can be created at any time.

### Sharing Thin Image volumes with global-active device

You can use a Thin Image (HTI) P-VOL as a global-active device (GAD) P-VOL or S-VOL.

The following tables list the relationship between Thin Image tasks and GAD pair status.



**Note:** If you share GAD volumes with Thin Image volumes, stop I/O to a volume before storing snapshot data. Snapshot consistency cannot be guaranteed if you store snapshot data without stopping I/O to the volume.

For more information about GAD, see the *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 Global-Active Device User Guide*.

The following table lists the Thin Image tasks you can perform when the P-VOL is shared with a GAD P-VOL.

| GAD status   | I/O mode    | HTI task    |                     |              |                      |             |
|--|-------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------|----------------------|-------------|
|  |             | Create pair | Store snapshot data | Restore pair | Delete snapshot data | Delete pair |
| COPY   | Mirror (RL) | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| PAIR   | Mirror (RL) | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| PSUS   | Local       | Yes         | Yes                 | Yes          | Yes                  | Yes         |
|  | Block       | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| PSUE   | Local       | Yes         | Yes                 | Yes          | Yes                  | Yes         |
|  | Block       | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| Legend:  |             |             |                     |              |                      |             |
| Yes: You can perform the task.                             |             |             |                     |              |                      |             |
| No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |             |             |                     |              |                      |             |

The following table lists the Thin Image tasks you can perform when the P-VOL is shared with a GAD S-VOL.

| GAD status   | I/O mode    | HTI task    |                     |              |                      |             |
|--|-------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------|----------------------|-------------|
|  |             | Create pair | Store snapshot data | Restore pair | Delete snapshot data | Delete pair |
| COPY   | Block       | No          | No                  | No           | No                   | Yes         |
| PAIR   | Mirror (RL) | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| SSUS   | Block       | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| PSUE   | Block       | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| SSWS   | Local       | Yes         | Yes                 | No           | Yes                  | Yes         |
| Legend:  |             |             |                     |              |                      |             |
| Yes: You can perform the task.                             |             |             |                     |              |                      |             |
| No: You cannot perform the task (the command is rejected). |             |             |                     |              |                      |             |

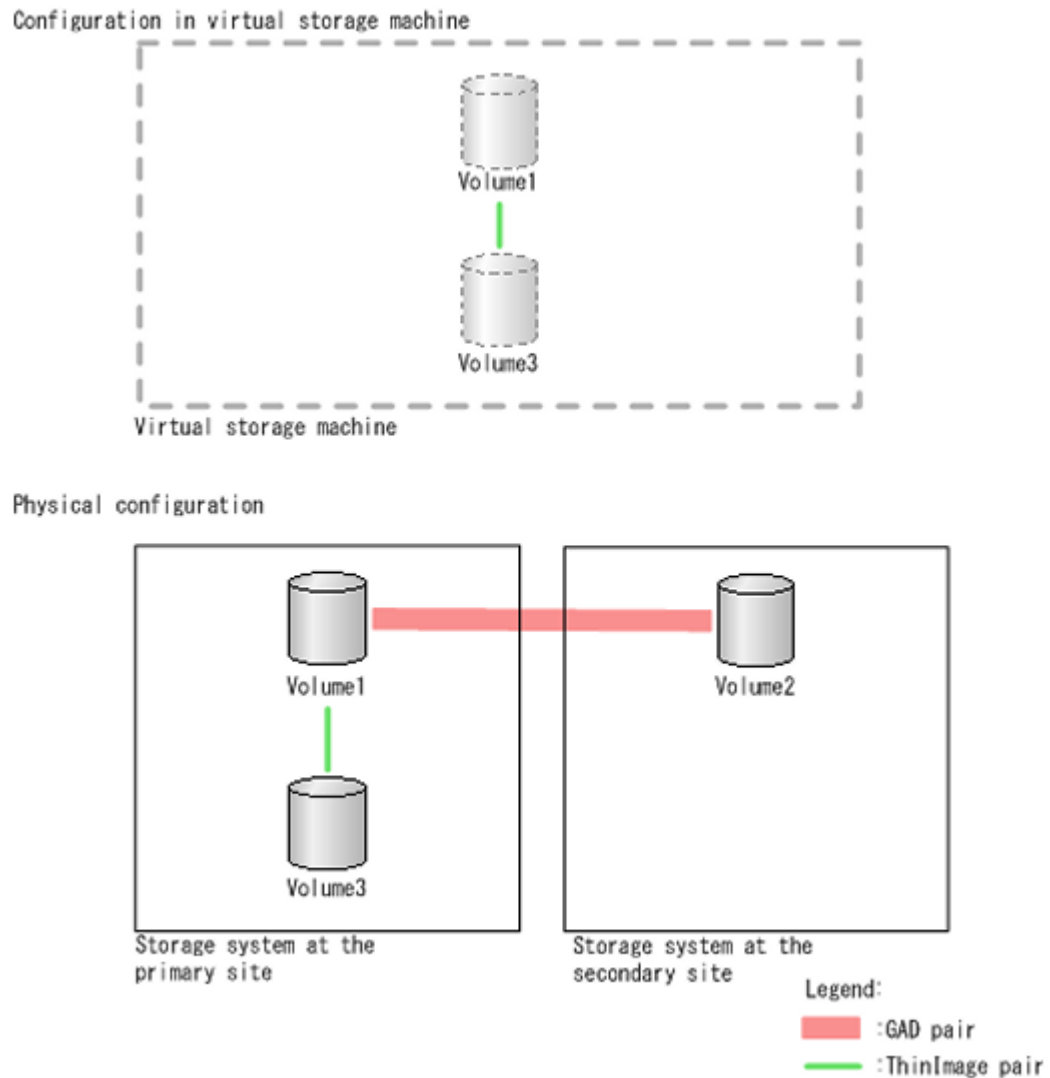
## Storage system configuration with Thin Image and GAD

Not all storage system configurations are supported when sharing a Thin Image volume with a GAD volume.

When you create a Thin Image pair using a volume from a GAD pair, the server recognizes the GAD P-VOL and S-VOL as a single volume. If you create Thin Image pairs using both the P-VOL and S-VOL of a GAD pair, the server recognizes the GAD P-VOL and S-VOL as a single volume being paired with multiple volumes by Thin Image.

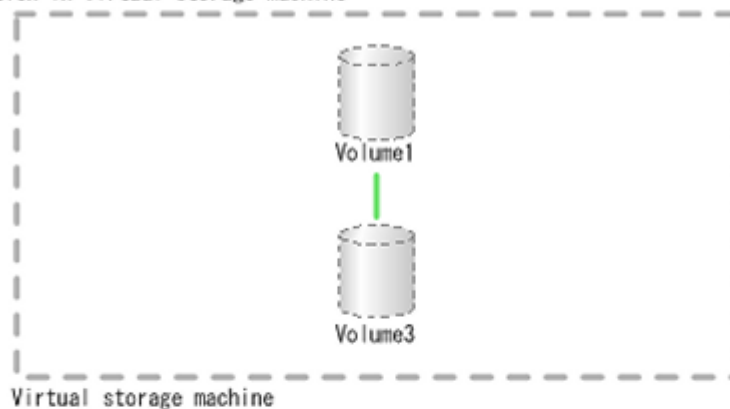
## Supported configurations

The following figure shows a supported storage system configuration with a Thin Image pair using a GAD P-VOL.

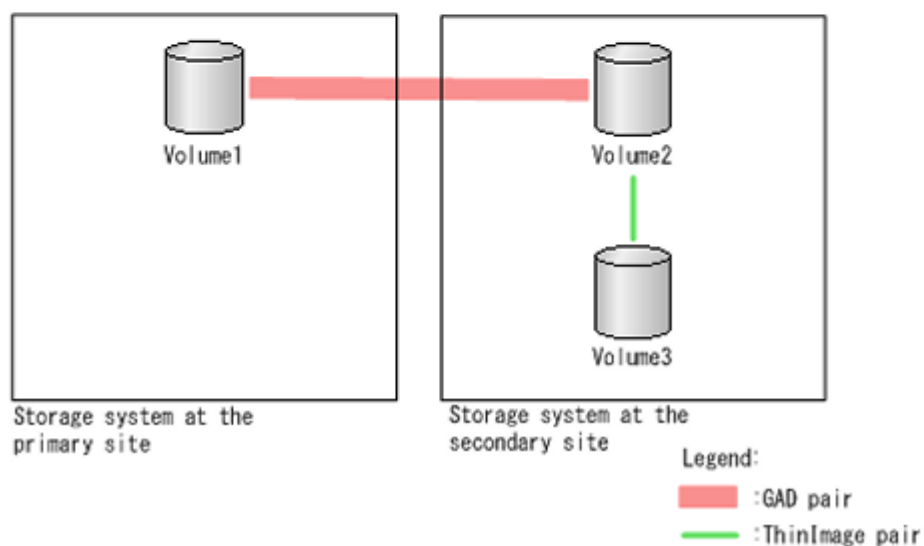


The following figure shows a supported storage system configuration with a Thin Image pair using a GAD S-VOL.

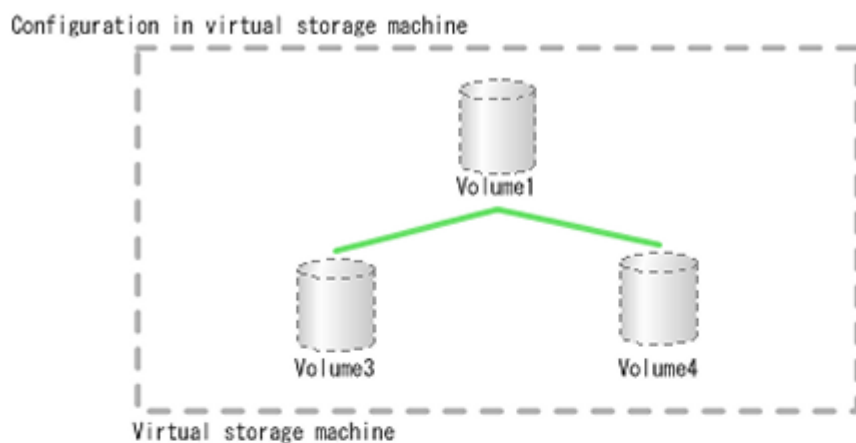
Configuration in virtual storage machine



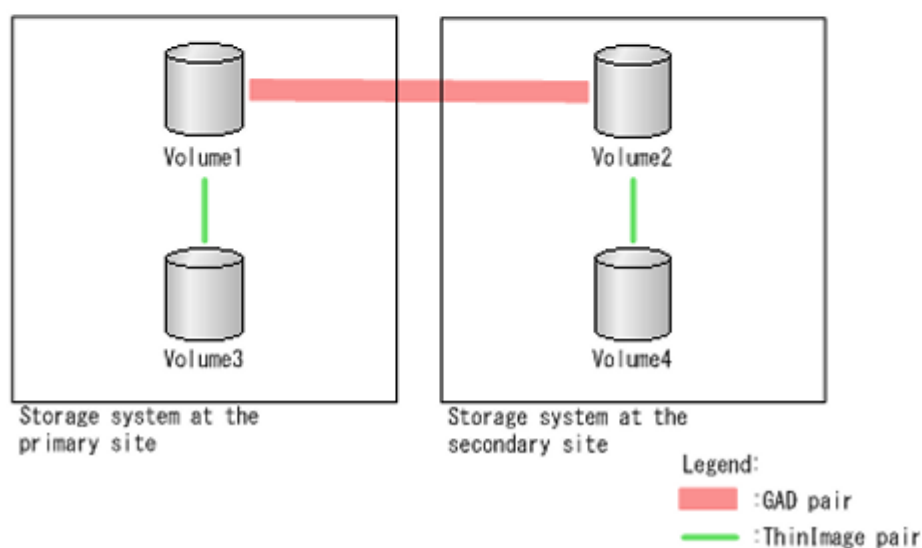
Physical configuration



The following figure shows a supported storage system configuration with Thin Image pairs using a GAD P-VOL and S-VOL.

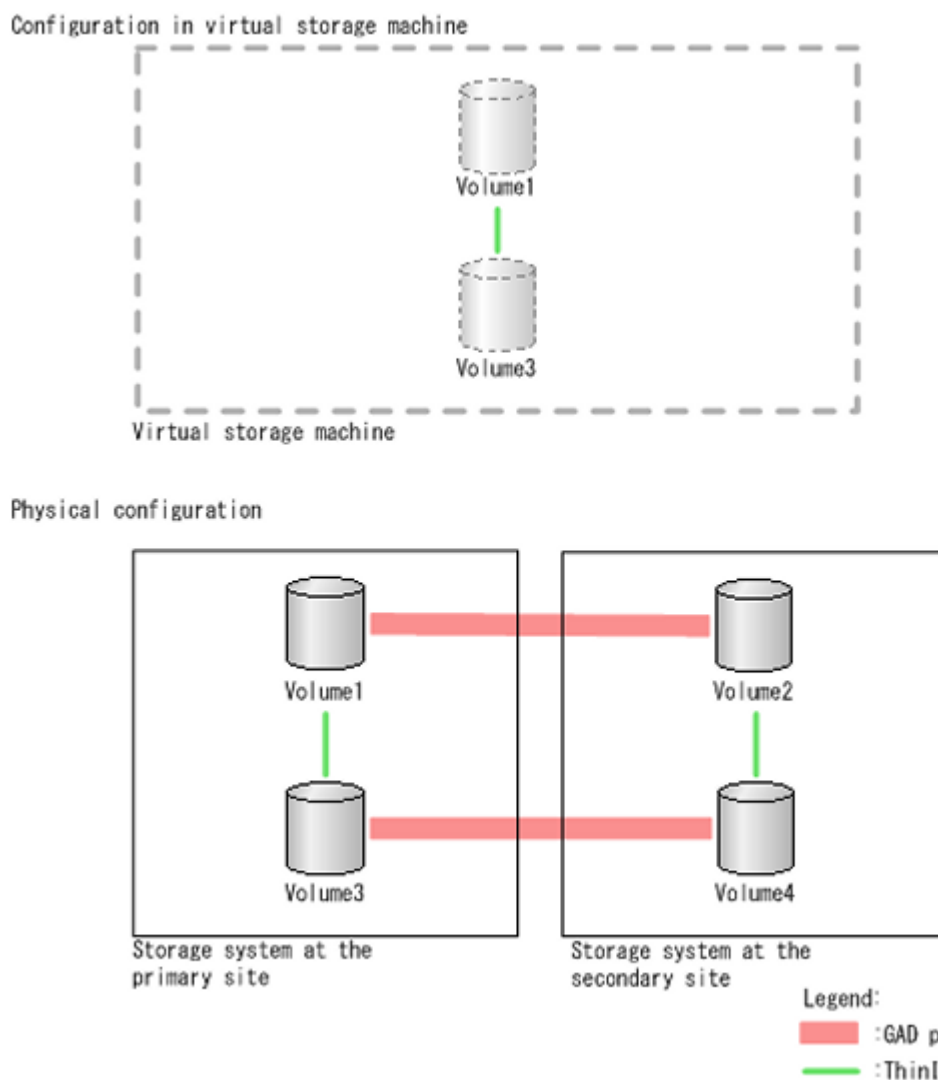


Physical configuration



### Unsupported configuration

You cannot create a GAD pair using Thin Image volumes that are already being used as a GAD P-VOL and S-VOL. The following figure shows this unsupported storage system configuration.



## Consistency group configuration with Thin Image and GAD

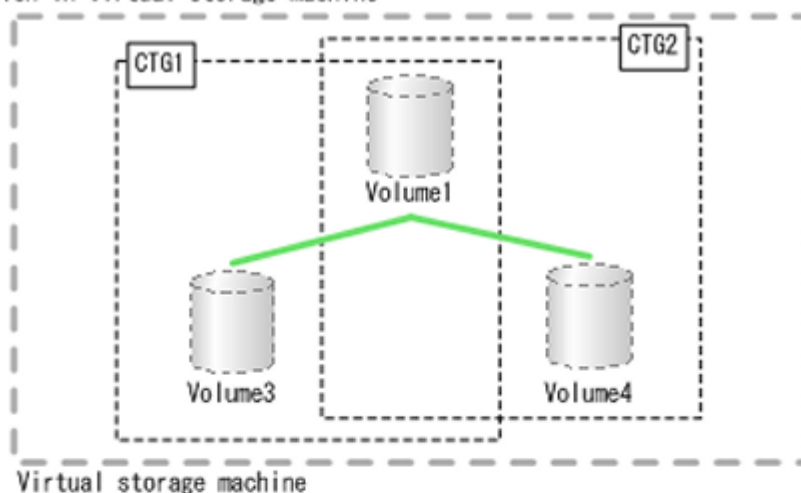
Not all consistency group configurations are supported when sharing a Thin Image volume with a GAD volume.

Pairs in a Thin Image consistency group must be in the same storage system. Therefore, if a GAD P-VOL and S-VOL are each used in Thin Image pairs, the Thin Image pairs cannot be registered to the same consistency group.

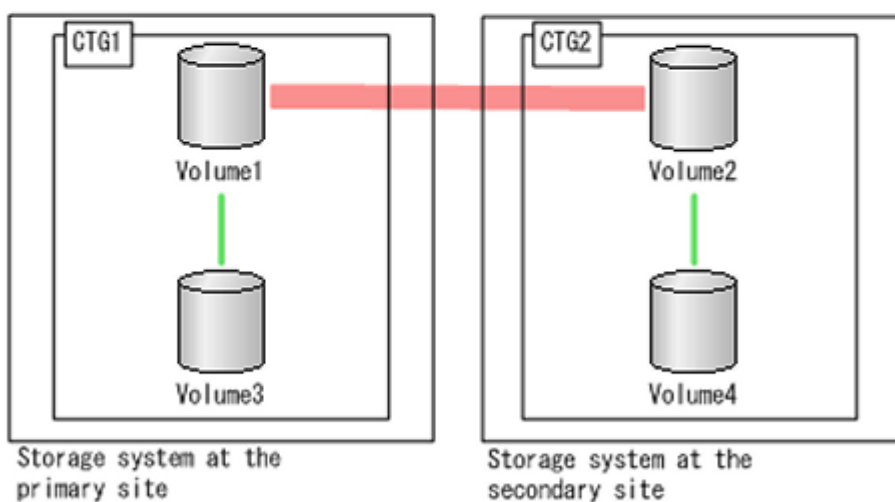
### Supported configuration

The following figure shows a supported consistency group configuration.

Configuration in virtual storage machine



Physical configuration



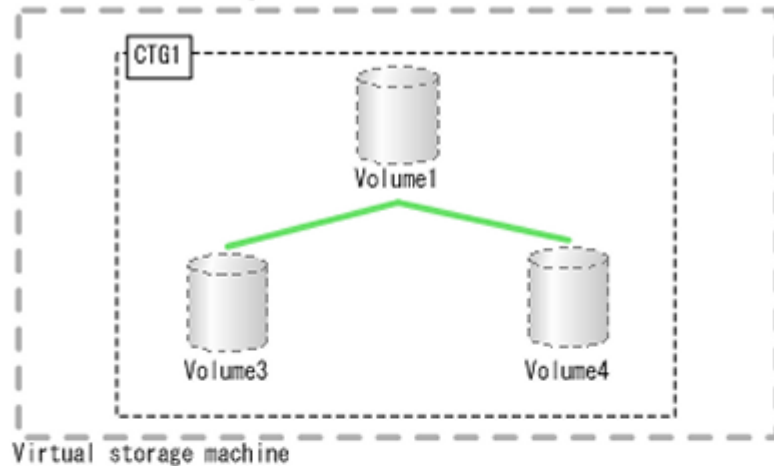
Legend:  
— : GAD pair  
— : ThinImage pair  
 CTG : Consistency group

### Unsupported configuration

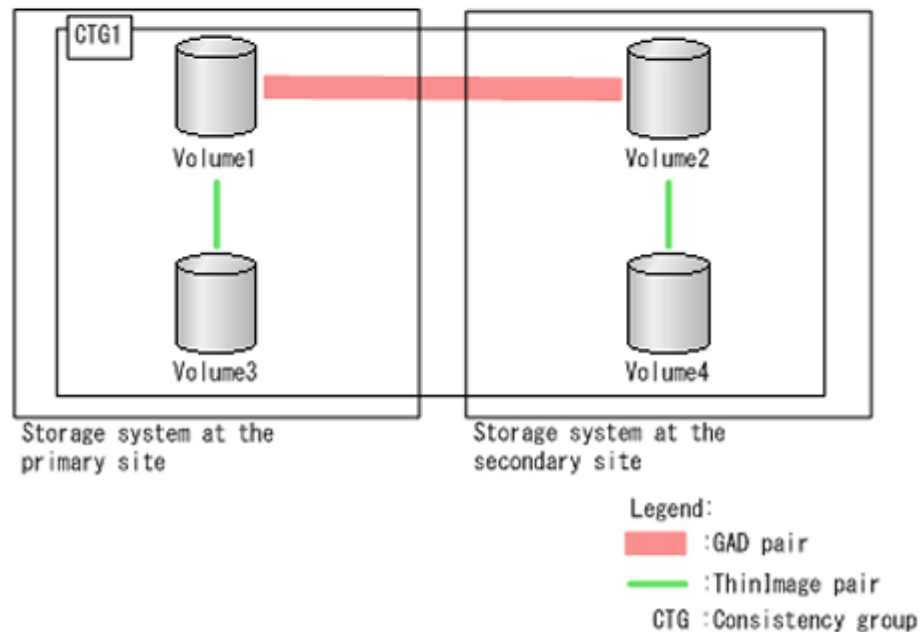
The following figure shows an unsupported consistency group configuration.



Configuration in virtual storage machine



Physical configuration



## Snapshot group configuration with Thin Image and GAD

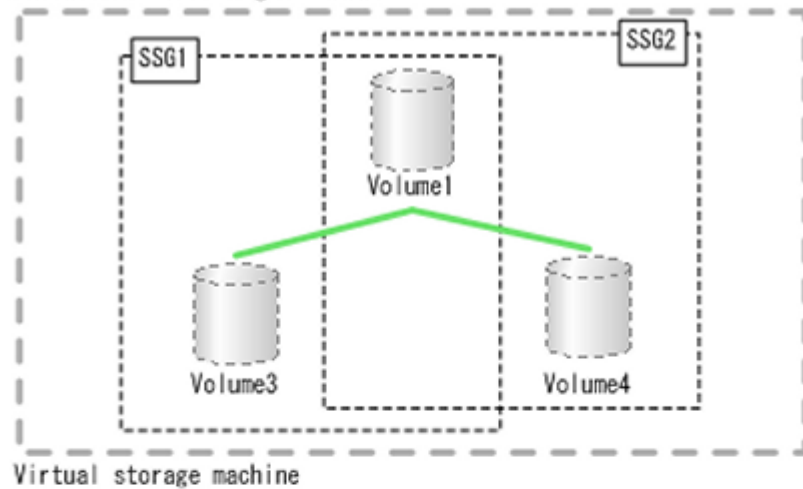
Not all snapshot group configurations are supported when sharing a Thin Image volume with a GAD volume.

Pairs in a Thin Image snapshot group must be in the same storage system. Therefore, if a GAD P-VOL and S-VOL are each used in Thin Image pairs, the Thin Image pairs cannot be registered to the same snapshot group.

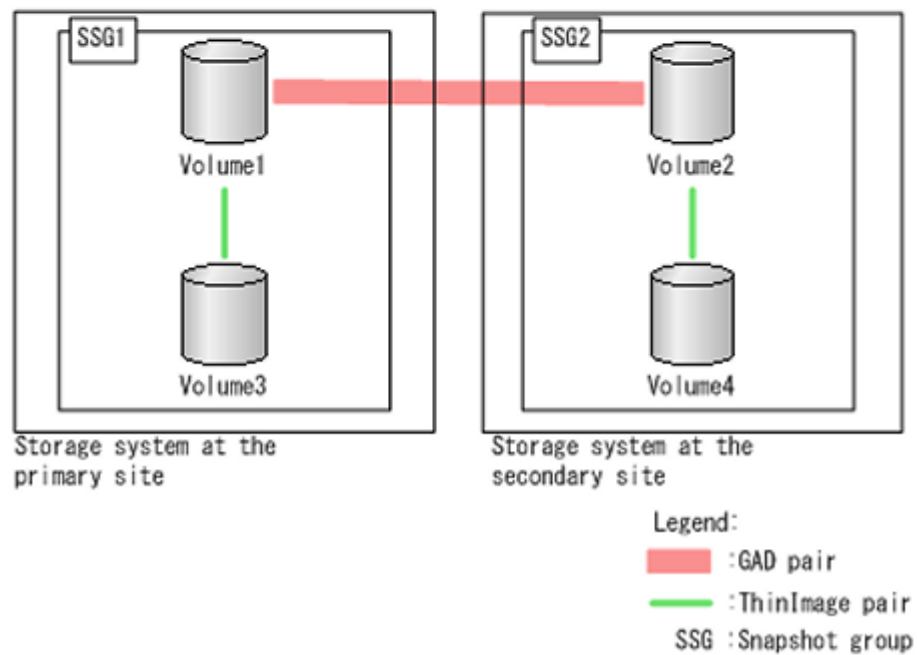
### Supported configuration

The following figure shows a supported snapshot group configuration.

Configuration in virtual storage machine



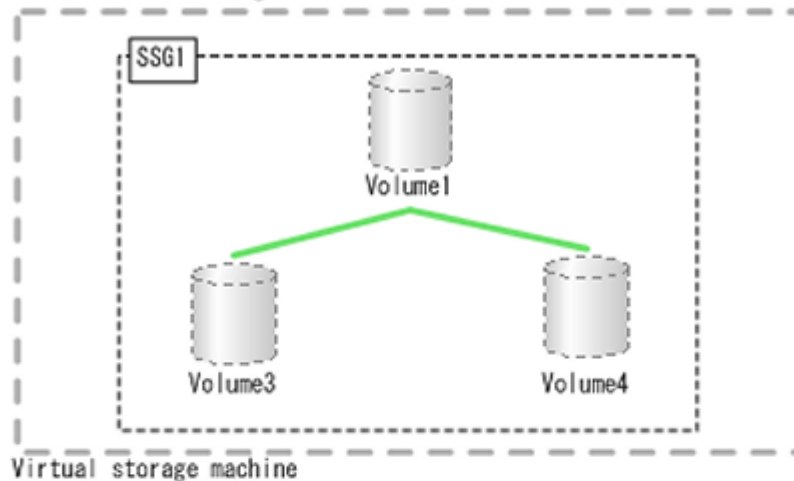
Physical configuration



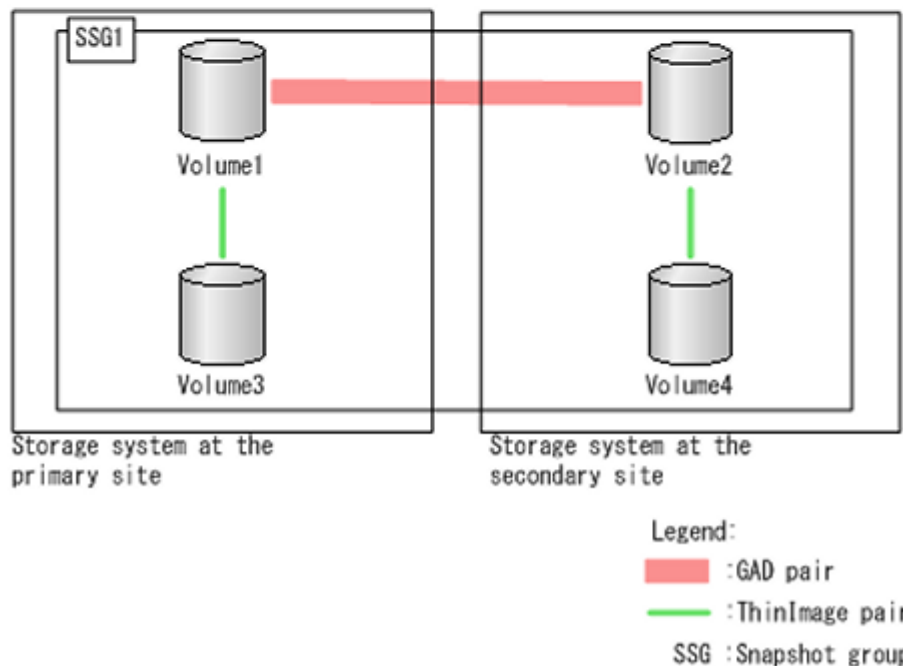
### Unsupported configuration

The following figure shows an unsupported snapshot group configuration.

Configuration in virtual storage machine



Physical configuration



## Sharing Thin Image volumes with Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe in a single storage system

If you are using Thin Image, Dynamic Provisioning, and HDPz in a single storage system, note the following when creating Thin Image pairs:

- You can create a Thin Image pair whose P-VOL is a Dynamic Provisioning V-VOL only if you are not currently expanding the Dynamic Provisioning V-VOL capacity.

- Performing a Thin Image paircreate operation while zero pages are being reclaimed (including reclamation by Writesame, Unmap command, or rebalancing) results in the zero-page operation being interrupted.
- Thin Image pair creation might be rejected if the Unmap command operation is in progress with system option mode 905 ON. Wait a while and then retry the operation. If the operation still fails, set system option mode 905 to OFF and retry again.
- You can use a maximum size Dynamic Provisioning volume as a Thin Image P-VOL. For information about the maximum size for Dynamic Provisioning volumes, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

#### **Related tasks**

- [Creating LDEVs](#) on page 82
- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97

## **Sharing Thin Image volumes with Resource Partition Manager**

You can create a Thin Image pair without regards to the resource group assignment of the P-VOL and S-VOLs. You must assign the pool you are using to the resource group where the P-VOL is assigned or to a resource group where you can create Thin Image pairs.

For more information about resource groups, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

## **Acronyms and abbreviations for VSP family storage system software applications used in this guide**

This user guide uses the following acronyms and abbreviations for software names.

- FCv2: Compatible FlashCopy® V2
- FCSE: Hitachi Compatible FlashCopy®
- GAD: global-active device
- SI: ShadowImage
- SIz: ShadowImage for Mainframe
- TC: TrueCopy
- TCz: TrueCopy for Mainframe
- HTI: Hitachi Thin Image
- UR: Universal Replicator
- URz: Universal Replicator for Mainframe

## Thin Image system and planning requirements

This chapter discusses the planning and design requirements for using Thin Image. Read this before using Thin Image.

- [Thin Image system requirements](#)
- [Thin Image planning requirements](#)

## Thin Image system requirements

The following is a list of requirements for performing HTI tasks:

- You have a VSP family storage system with P-VOL and S-VOLs.
- HTI and HDP, which run on HDvM - SN computers, are installed.  
HDP accesses data in pool-VOLs by way of V-VOLs. It can handle data in open-system servers such as UNIX and PC servers.
- The hardware and microcode (or firmware) is configured and set up.
- You have used HDvM - SN to install the license key for HDP.  
For more information about license keys and installing HDvM - SN and HDP, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide* or the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.

## Installing Thin Image

Use this procedure to install Thin Image.

### Procedure

1. Install Dynamic Provisioning.



**Note:** Dynamic Provisioning is prerequisite software for Thin Image.

---

2. Install Thin Image.

## Uninstalling Thin Image

Use this procedure to remove Thin Image from HDvM - SN.

### Procedure

1. Delete the Thin Image pairs.
2. Delete all pools.
3. Remove Thin Image.

### Related tasks

- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113
- [Deleting pools](#) on page 159

## Thin Image licensed capacity requirements

Thin Image requires licensed capacity for the Thin Image P-VOLs and pools.

Thin Image uses a portion of the Dynamic Provisioning licensed capacity for its pool capacity. Make sure you have enough Dynamic Provisioning licensed capacity to run both HDP and Thin Image.

The following table shows the Thin Image volumes and capacity calculated as the Thin Image usage. The total amount of these values must not exceed the Thin Image licensed capacity.

| Intended volumes     |             |                         | Intended capacity                    |
|----------------------|-------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Software application | Volume type | Normal volume or DP-VOL |                                      |
| HTI                  | P-VOL       | Normal volume           | The volume capacity                  |
|                      |             | DP-VOL                  | The pool capacity used by the volume |
|                      | Pool-VOL    | Normal volume           | The volume capacity                  |

For more information about licenses, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide* or the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.

### Related concepts

- [VSP family software applications for Thin Image](#) on page 21

## Thin Image shared (or control) memory requirements

Thin Image requires dedicated shared memory (SM), also known as control memory, for the Thin Image pair management area.



**Note:** The terms "shared memory" and "control memory" refer to the same hardware on different VSP storage systems. The term "shared memory" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "control memory" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800. In this topic, "shared memory" is used to mean either.

The Thin Image pair management area is an area used to store information for associating Thin Image pairs that is automatically created when you install shared memory.

Additional shared memory is required when the total capacity of all pools exceeds certain values. The following table shows the shared memory requirements for VSP G1000:

| Capacity of all pools                                       | Capacity required for additional SM |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Under 1.1 PB  | None*                               |
| From 1.1 PB to 3.4 PB                                       | 8 GB                                |
| From 3.4 PB to 7.9 PB                                       | 24 GB                               |
| From 7.9 PB to 12.3 PB                                      | 40 GB                               |
| *You must expand SM when pool capacity is more than 1.1 PB. |                                     |

For VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models, additional shared memory is required when the total capacity of all pools exceeds the following values:

- VSP G200: 0.12 PB

- VSP G400, G600, G800, VSP F400, F600, F800: 0.2 PB

For more information about capacity available for additional control memory for VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models, see the hardware guide for your storage system.

You can reduce or remove shared memory if the pools for Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, active flash, and Thin Image have been deleted.

For more information about how to expand, reduce, or remove shared memory, call Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

#### Related concepts

- [Switching off the power supply](#) on page 166

#### Related tasks

- [Deleting pools](#) on page 159

## Thin Image volume requirements

Thin Image requires three types of volumes.

The following types of volumes are required:

- P-VOLs
- S-VOLs
- Pool-VOLs

An S-VOL is only required if you want to create a Thin Image pair with an S-VOL specified. If you create a Thin Image pair without an S-VOL specified, an S-VOL is not necessary.

The following table lists the requirements for Thin Image P-VOLs.

| Item                  | Requirement  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Volume type           | <p>Logical volumes (LDEVs).</p> <p>You cannot specify the following volumes as HTI P-VOLs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pool-VOLs</li> <li>• HTI S-VOLs</li> </ul> <p>For more information about creating pairs using other software applications, see <a href="#">Sharing Thin Image volumes with other Hitachi software applications on page 32</a>.</p> |
| Emulation type        | OPEN-V   |
| Volume limit          | <p>32,768</p> <p>For more information about the maximum number of HTI pairs, see <a href="#">Thin Image planning requirements on page 60</a>.</p>  |
| Path definitions      | Required.  |
| Volume capacity limit | 256 TB   |



The following table lists the requirements for Thin Image S-VOLs.

| Item                      | Requirement   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Volume type               | V-VOLs.<br>You cannot specify the following volumes as HTI S-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volumes that are already used as S-VOLs.</li> <li>• Volumes that other software applications are using for pairs or migration plans.</li> </ul> |
| Emulation type            | OPEN-V  |
| Maximum number of volumes | 32,768<br><br>For more information about the maximum number of HTI pairs, see <a href="#">Thin Image planning requirements on page 60</a> .   |
| Path definitions          | Required.   |

The following table lists the requirements for Thin Image pool-VOLs.

| Item           | Requirement  |
|----------------|--|
| Volume type    | Logical volumes (LDEVs).<br><br>To maintain performance levels, use the following configurations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Place normal volumes and pool-VOLs in separate parity groups (see <a href="#">Thin Image licensed capacity requirements on page 54</a>).</li> <li>• Ensure that pool-VOLs consist of LDEVs from more than one parity group.</li> </ul> You cannot specify the following volumes as HTI pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volumes that have a volume status other than "Normal" or "Normal (Quick Format)".<br/><b>Note:</b> While you are blocking or copying a volume, you cannot specify the volume.</li> <li>• Volumes that are already being used as HTI P-VOL or S-VOLs.</li> <li>• Volumes that are already contained in HTI, HDP, HDT, or active flash pools.</li> <li>• Volumes used as migration plans or pair volumes for another product.</li> <li>• Volumes for which you have used the Data Retention Utility to set Read Only, Protect, or S-VOL Disable attributes.</li> <li>• (VSP G1000 only) Cache Residency Manager volumes.</li> <li>• Command device volumes.</li> <li>• GAD volumes with the reservation attribute.</li> <li>• GAD volumes for quorum disks.</li> <li>• External volumes with the Data Direct Mapping attribute.</li> <li>• DP-VOLs with the Data Direct Mapping attribute.</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> The following restrictions apply to volumes used in the same data pool: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volumes must be in the same resource group.</li> <li>• External pool-VOLs must have the same cache mode, either enabled or disabled.</li> <li>• When using both internal and external volumes, the external volumes must have cache mode enabled.</li> </ul> |
| Emulation type | OPEN-V   |

| Item                                  | Requirement  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| RAID level                            | All RAID levels are supported.   |
| Data drive type                       | <p>You can use SAS and SSD.*</p> <p>Regardless of the type of the volume (internal volume or external volume), you can use pool-VOLs with different drive types in the same pool. For best performance, use pool-VOLs with the same drive type in the same pool.</p> <p>For more information about data drive type, see <a href="#">Pool creation and data drive type priority on page 74</a>.</p>   |
| CLPR                                  | <p>Registering pool-VOLs to Cache Logical Partition Numbers (CLPRs) in pools:</p> <p>You can register pool-VOLs assigned to different CLPRs in a pool (see <a href="#">Workflow for registering virtual volumes on page 75</a>).</p> <p>Changing CLPRs:</p> <p>You can change CLPRs in the parity group belonging to the pool-VOL. In this case, regardless of the CLPR in the pool-VOL, the CLPR ID in the parity must be the same as that of the P-VOL that you are using.</p> |
| Pool limit                            | 1,024  |
| Volume capacity                       | 8 GB to 4 TB   |
| Path definition                       | Define only needed paths to a volume so that you can specify the volume as a pool-VOL.   |
| *SSD contains SSD (SLC, MLC) and FMD. |  |

## Thin Image data pool requirements

The following table lists the requirements for Thin Image data pools.

| Item                          | Requirement   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Pool capacity                 | Calculate the pool capacity (see <a href="#">Calculating and assigning pool capacity on page 63</a> ).  |
| Pool-VOL limit per pool       | <p>1,024</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot assign a volume that is already assigned to a pool as a pool-VOL to another pool.</p>   |
| Pool limit per storage system | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VSP G200, VSP G400, G600: 64<br/>Pool IDs are assigned from 0 to 63.</li> <li>VSP G800, VSP G1000: 128<br/>Pool IDs are assigned from 0 to 127.</li> </ul> <p>This can include HDP (including HDT and active flash), HDPz (including HDTz and active flash for mainframe), and HTI pool types.</p> |
| Increasing capacity           | Dynamically increase the pool-VOL capacity. To do this, increase the capacity for at least one parity group.  |
| Decreasing pool capacity      | <p>Use the following workflow to decrease pool capacity:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete the pool-VOLs (see <a href="#">Decreasing pool capacity on page 147</a>).</li> </ol>   |

| Item                        | Requirement  |
|-----------------------------|--|
|                             | 2. Reconfigure the pool (see <a href="#">Creating Thin Image data pools on page 69</a> ).  |
| Deleting pools              | The pool is not used by an HTI pair.<br><br>For more information about deleting pools, see <a href="#">Deleting pools on page 159</a> .  |
| Data pool warning threshold | Value: <i>Warning Threshold</i><br><br>Range: 20 - 95%, in 1% increments.<br><br>Default: 80%<br><br><b>Note:</b> If you exceed the data pool warning threshold, a warning is issued through a service information message (SIM) and an SNMP trap reporting excessive pool usage.<br><br>For more information:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>About editing the data pool warning threshold, see <a href="#">Editing the data pool warning threshold on page 152</a>.</li> <li>About checking alerts and checking the details of a SIM, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> or the <i>System Administrator Guide</i> for your storage system.</li> <li>About SNMP traps, see the <i>Hitachi SNMP Agent User Guide</i>.</li> </ul> |

## Thin Image consistency group requirements

The following table explains requirements for Thin Image consistency groups.

| Item                 | Requirement   |
|----------------------|---|
| Consistency group ID | Value: 0 to 2,047<br><br>With SI, SIz, and HTI, you can create up to 2,048 consistency groups in a VSP G1000 storage system.<br><br>Manual assignment of a consistency group ID to an HTI pair using the <code>paircreate</code> command:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify a consistency group ID from 0 to 255.</li> </ul> Automatic assignment of a consistency group ID to an HTI pair using the <code>paircreate</code> or <code>raidcom add snapshot</code> commands:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using the <code>paircreate</code> command, if a number is not specified, an unassigned number from 0 to 255 is automatically assigned.</li> <li>Using the <code>raidcom add snapshot</code> command, if a number is not specified, an unassigned number from 0 to 2,047 is automatically assigned.</li> </ul> Consistency group ID is displayed in the following windows:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Consistency Groups</b> tab in <b>Local Replication</b> window.</li> <li><b>Consistency Group Properties</b> window.</li> </ul> |
| Pair limit           | 8,192 pairs per consistency group.  |

| Item | Requirement   |
|------|---|
|      | <b>Note:</b> You cannot define a mix of SI, SIz, and HTI pairs in a consistency group. HTI consistency groups can only contain HTI pairs. |

## Thin Image snapshot group requirements

The following table explains requirements for Thin Image snapshot groups.

| Item                     | Requirement  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Name                     | Character limit: 32.<br>After you create a snapshot group, you cannot change the name.   |
| Group and HTI pair limit | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Snapshot groups per storage system: 2,048.</li> <li>HTI pairs per snapshot group: 8,192.</li> </ul> |

## Thin Image planning requirements

You must calculate the number of Thin Image pairs you can create.

When you create Thin Image pairs for a P-VOL for the first time, the number of pairs that you can create in a storage system depends on several variables.

- The number of Thin Image pairs that you can create based on the number of available pair tables.
- The snapshot estimated manageable capacity.
- The number of cache management devices that you must make available.

The smallest of the three calculations is the maximum number of Thin Image pairs that you can create in the storage system.

When you create Thin Image pairs again, you only need to know the number of pair tables to calculate the number of pairs that you can create. You do not need to know the snapshot estimated manageable capacity or the number of cache management devices.

If you have multiple P-VOLs, calculate the number of Thin Image pairs that you can create for each P-VOL in the storage system.

## Calculating the number of Thin Image pairs based on pair tables

Pair tables contain information that is required to manage HTI pairs. Each HTI pair requires at least one pair table.

Maximum number of pair tables:

- VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models: 102,400
- 1,048,575

To view the number of existing HTI pairs, see [Viewing local replication summary information on page 123](#).

Calculate the number of HTI pairs that you will need using the following formula:

#### **VSP G200, G400, G600, G800**

Number of HTI pairs you will need based on pair tables =  
 $102,400 - (\text{number of existing HTI pairs})$

#### **VSP G1000**

Number of HTI pairs you will need based on pair tables =  
 $1,048,575 - (\text{number of existing HTI pairs})$

## **Calculating Thin Image pairs based on the snapshot estimated manageable capacity**

You can calculate the number of HTI pairs you can create based on the snapshot estimated manageable capacity.

To view the snapshot estimated manageable capacity, see [Viewing local replication summary information on page 123](#).

Calculate the number of HTI pairs that you can create using the following formulas, where SM refers to shared (or control) memory:

Number of HTI pairs that you can create =  
Snapshot estimated manageable capacity / Snapshot management capacity in a P-VOL

Snapshot estimated manageable capacity in a P-VOL [GB] =  
 $(\text{P-VOL capacity of HTI pairs [TB]} / 2.6) * 3,024 + (168 * 2 (\text{consumed shared memory [GB]}))$



**Note:** The terms "shared memory" and "control memory" refer to the same hardware on different VSP storage systems. The term "shared memory" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "control memory" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800. In this topic, "shared memory" is used to mean either.

---

#### **Related tasks**

- [Viewing the list of primary volumes](#) on page 126

## **Calculating Thin Image pairs based on cache management devices**

Cache management devices are the unit for controlling the cache in association with logical volumes (LDEVs). They are required to perform HTI tasks, such as creating HTI pairs for a volume.

To view the number of cache management devices, see [Viewing the number of cache management devices on page 138](#).

Use the following formula to calculate the number of HTI pairs that you can create based on the number of cache management devices:

Number of HTI pairs that you can create =  
Number of cache management devices / ceil (the P-VOL capacity of HTI pairs [TB]) / 2.6)

#### Related concepts

- [Calculating the number of remaining cache management devices](#) on page 173

## Calculating the number of cache management devices

You can calculate the number of cache management devices you must reserve to initially create a Thin Image pair for a volume.

Use the following formula:

Number of cache management devices that you must reserve =  
ceil (Size of P-VOL [TB] / 2.6)

If the amount of pool usage for the P-VOL exceeds 70 percent of the total capacity of the cache management devices reserved for the P-VOL, you must reserve another cache management device. You can reserve a maximum of 256 cache management devices for each P-VOL.

## Thin Image cache management device requirements

The following table shows the cache management device requirements for performing Thin Image tasks.

| Task                                       | Number of cache management devices required   |
|--|---|
| Initially create an HTI pool.              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• VSP G200: 3,840</li><li>• VSP G400, G600 and VSP F400, F600: 7,936</li><li>• VSP G800 and VSP F800: 32,512</li><li>• VSP G1000: 8,192*</li></ul> <p>*HTI assigns 4,096 of the 8,192 devices that are available.</p> |
| Create a volume.                           | 1   |
| Create a P-VOL.                            | 256   |
| (VSP G1000 only)                           | 4,097   |
| Initially create an HTI pair for a volume. |   |

(VSP G1000 only) You can manage up to 65,280 cache management devices in a VSP G1000 storage system.

## Calculating and assigning pool capacity

You can use these formulas to calculate and assign pool capacity.

Use the following formula to calculate the capacity of the snapshot data that you can store in the pool:

$$\text{Capacity of the snapshot data that you can store in the pool} = \text{Total capacity of pool-VOLs in the pool} - \text{Capacity of V-VOL management areas}$$

The capacity of V-VOL management areas is 3% of the pool capacity.

Use the following formula to calculate the pool capacity:

$$\text{Capacity of the pool [MB]} = \text{Total number of pages} * 42 - 4200$$

Use the following formula to calculate the total number of pages:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Total number of pages} = & \\ & \text{Sigma (floor (floor (pool-VOL number of blocks / 512) / 168))} \\ & \text{for each pool-VOL} \end{aligned}$$

floor( ): Truncates the value calculated from the formula in parentheses after the decimal point.

Estimate pool-VOL capacity in multiples of 42 MB. Specifying a pool-VOL capacity in other multiples less than 42 MB truncates the fraction.

If you install HDP/HDT/HTI Extension in the shared (or control) memory, the available pool capacity per P-VOL is 768 TB, and the total capacity of all pools depends on the storage system model:

- VSP G200: 3.5 PB
- VSP G400, G600, G800: 6.5 PB
- VSP G1000: 12.3 PB

### Related references

- [Thin Image shared \(or control\) memory requirements](#) on page 55

## Resolving insufficient pool capacity

Make sure you have sufficient pool capacity. If the pool capacity is insufficient, the storage system can suspend Thin Image pairs ("PSUE" status).

### Procedure

1. Estimate the capacity of snapshot data to be copied to the pool.  
If the capacity of snapshot data to be copied to the pool varies hour by hour, ensure that the largest capacity is your pool capacity.
2. Assign the pool capacity based on the estimate.

### Pool capacity calculations

You can calculate the required pool capacity by estimating the capacity of snapshot data to be copied.

Use the following formula:

$$\text{Capacity of snapshot data to be copied} = \frac{\text{Capacity of data written to the same area in the P-VOL during the period from when snapshot data is stored to when the snapshot data is deleted}}{\text{Number of snapshots stored in the pool}}$$

Although the pool capacity is decided according to the estimation, if the pool capacity exceeds the threshold, address the issue.

If multiple snapshot data are stored, the data may be shared in a pool. In this case, you can release Thin Image pairs, but the snapshot data cannot be deleted from the pool. If you release all Thin Image pairs that have snapshot data containing the shared data, the snapshot data are also deleted from the pool.

### Creating a backup of data

You can create a backup of data using Thin Image. The target for the backup is only the areas where the snapshot data is stored. Therefore, you can create a backup copy even if the pool capacity is small.

During creation of a backup copy, a significant amount of data is read from the secondary volume. This may increase the accesses to the primary volume and degrade the host I/O performance.

### Procedure

1. Store the snapshot data.
2. Use an S-VOL.

### Related tasks

- [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data](#) on page 104

### Universal Volume Manager and external volumes used as pool-VOLs

You can use Universal Volume Manager (UVM) to connect a VSP family storage system to other storage systems.

In UVM, a VSP family storage system is referred to as a local storage system, and the other storage systems are referred to as external storage systems.



With UVM installed, you can use external and internal volumes as pool-VOLs. Volumes in local storage systems are referred to as internal volumes, and volumes in external storage systems are referred to as external volumes.



**Note:** Using external volumes increases the likelihood of a failure, and disaster recovery is more complex and challenging. Using multiple external volumes as pool-VOLs in a pool increases the likelihood of the pool being blocked.

---

To minimize the adverse effects of failure, use only one pool per external storage system. An external pool-VOL that is blocked due to a failure blocks the pool. You must restore blocked pools.

For more information about external storage systems and disaster recovery methods for external volumes, see the *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*.

## Simultaneous processing of multiple Thin Image pair tasks

Some Thin Image pair task operations are processed in the background after the requested task is accepted. The total number of instances of each pair task that can be simultaneously processed in a storage system is limited by the number of MP blades (or units) in the storage system.



**Note:** The terms "blade" and "unit" refer to the same hardware on different VSP storage systems. The term "blade" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "unit" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800.

---

For each of the following pair tasks, the number of simultaneous instances processed in the background is equal to the total number of MP blades (or units) in the storage system:

- Creating pairs.
- Restoring pairs.
- Deleting snapshot data and deleting pairs.

When you execute additional pair task operations above these limits, the tasks are processed in the order requested.

### Related tasks

- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97
- [Restoring Thin Image pairs](#) on page 108
- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111
- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113



## Configuring Thin Image

This chapter describes how to create data pools, create LDEVs, and use the settings of the command device to configure Thin Image.

- ☐ [Prerequisites for configuring Thin Image](#)
- ☐ [Workflow for configuring Thin Image](#)
- ☐ [Workflow for registering virtual volumes](#)
- ☐ [Overview of using CCI to run commands through in-band connections](#)
- ☐ [Changing system options that affect Thin Image performance](#)

## Prerequisites for configuring Thin Image

Before you perform Thin Image configuration tasks, complete the following tasks:

- Install a sufficient amount of shared memory, also known as control memory.

For more information about installing shared memory, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

- Create a V-VOL management area in the shared memory. This area is automatically created when you install additional shared memory.



**Note:** The terms "shared memory" and "control memory" refer to the same hardware on different VSP storage systems. The term "shared memory" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "control memory" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800. In this topic, "shared memory" is used to mean either.

---

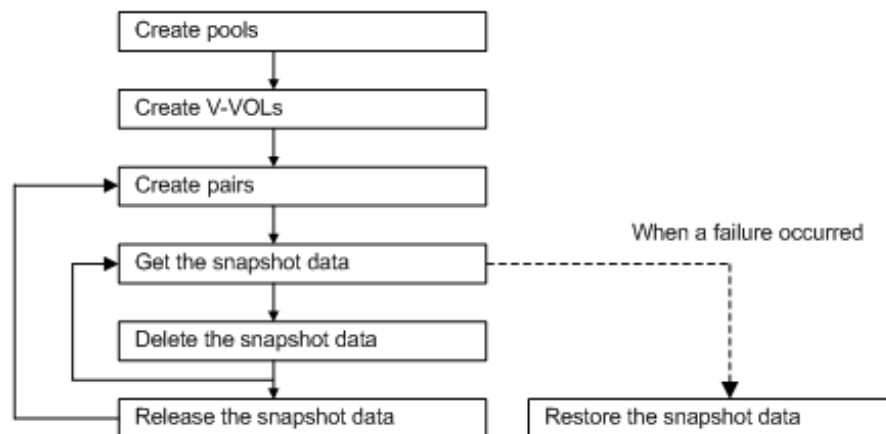
### Related references

- [Thin Image shared \(or control\) memory requirements](#) on page 55

## Workflow for configuring Thin Image

Use this workflow to configure Thin Image.

The following image shows the configuration tasks workflow and the workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs.



Steps for configuring Thin Image:

1. Create the Thin Image data pools (see [Creating Thin Image data pools on page 69](#)).

2. Create and register the V-VOLs for the pair (see [Workflow for registering virtual volumes on page 75](#)).
3. Create and manage the Thin Image pairs (see [Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs on page 69](#)).

## Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs

Use this workflow to create and manage Thin Image pairs.

1. Create the Thin Image pairs (see [Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs on page 96](#)).
2. Split the Thin Image pair to store the snapshot data using one of the available methods (see [Snapshot data storage methods on page 103](#)).
3. If a failure occurs and the pair is suspended ("PSUE" status), complete the following:
  - a. Recover the data by recovering the Thin Image pair (see [Restoring suspended Thin Image pairs on page 110](#)).
  - b. Restore the pair, which writes snapshot data over the P-VOL (see [Restoring Thin Image pairs on page 108](#)).
4. Maintain the Thin Image pair status (see [How Thin Image pair status changes on page 29](#)).
5. Delete the Thin Image pairs (see [Deleting Thin Image pairs on page 113](#)).

## Creating Thin Image data pools

Use this task to create Thin Image data pools using HDvM - SN. You create Thin Image data pools by selecting the pool-VOL to add to the data pool.



**Note:** You can only register volumes that you have not already registered as a pool-VOL.

---

For more information about data pool requirements, including the maximum number of pool-VOLs, see [Thin Image data pool requirements on page 58](#).

You can add external and internal volumes to data pools.

---



**Note:** There are limitations to adding external and internal volumes to data pools. For more information about these limitations, see the requirements for Thin Image pool-VOLs listed in [Thin Image volume requirements on page 56](#).

---

## Procedure

### 1. Navigate to the **Create Pools** wizard.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.
- In the **Pools** window, select **Create Pools**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
- In the **Pools** window, select **Create Pools**.

1. Create Pools

2. Confirm

This wizard lets you create pools for Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image. Enter the information for the pool you want to create, and then click Add. Click Finish to confirm the creation, or click Next if you want to create LDEVs (virtual volumes) from the pools.

Pool Type: **Dynamic Provisioning**

System Type: **Open** ☐ Mainframe

Multi-Tier Pool: **Enable** ☐ Disable

Active Flash: ☐

Pool Volume Selection: **Auto** ☐ Manual

Drive Type/RPM: **Mixable**

RAID Level: **Mixable**

Select Pool VOLS

Total Selected Pool Volumes:

Total Selected Capacity:

Pool Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Options

Initial Pool ID: 0 (0-127)

Subscription Limit: % (0-65534, or blank for "Unlimited")

Warning Threshold: 70 % (1-100)

Depletion Threshold: 80 % (1-100 and greater than or equal to Warning Threshold)

Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL: **No** ☐ Yes ☒ No

Protect V-VOLs when: **No** ☐ Yes ☒ No

Add

Selected Pools

| Pool Name (ID) | RAID Level | Capacity | Pool Type | Drive Type/RPM | Us |
|----------------|------------|----------|-----------|----------------|----|
| No Data        |            |          |           |                |    |

Detail Remove Selected: 0 of 0

Next Task Option: Continue to Create LDEVs Back Next Finish Cancel ?

### 2. In the **Create Pools** window of the **Create Pools** wizard, complete the following items for the pool you want to create, and then click **Add**:

- Pool Type**  
Select **Thin Image** as the pool type.  
Default: **Dynamic Provisioning**  
Required: Yes
- System Type**  
Value: **Open**  
Default: **Open**
- Pool Volume Selection**

Select the pool volume you want to use for the pool. Complete the following:

**Drive Type/RPM:** Select your pool-VOL's data drive type and RPM.

**RAID Level:** Select your pool-VOL's RAID level. If you selected **External Storage** as the **Drive Type/RPM**, a hyphen (-) is displayed for this item and this item is unavailable.

Default: **Mixable**

Required: Yes

- **Pool Name**

Enter a name for the pool, using 32 alphanumeric characters or fewer. This field is case sensitive.

- **Initial Pool ID**

The initial pool identifier. Enter 0 and an integer number.

Integer number range: 0 - 127

Default: The smallest available number displays as the default. If no available pool ID exists, no number appears. If an already registered pool ID is entered, the smallest available pool ID that is larger than the one entered is used.

- **Warning Threshold**

The data pool capacity threshold.

Range (%): 20 - 95

Default (%): 80

The pool-VOL is added to the **Selected Pools** table of the **Create Pools** window.

- 3.** Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.

[illegible]

- Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
- If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
- Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Next steps

Select the pool volumes.

## Related tasks

- [Selecting pool volumes](#) on page 72
- [Increasing pool capacity](#) on page 142

## Selecting pool volumes

You can select a pool-VOL to add when creating pools. The selected pool-VOL's information is used to calculate Total Selected Pool Volumes and Total Selected Capacity in the **Create Pools** window.



## Procedure

### 1. Navigate to the **Create Pools** wizard.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.
- In the **Pools** window, select **Create Pools**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
- In the **Pools** window, select **Create Pools**.

**Create Pools**

1. Create Pools > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you create pools for Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image. Enter the information for the pool you want to create, and then click Add. Click Finish to confirm the creation, or click Next if you want to create LDEVs (virtual volumes) from the pools.

Pool Type: ☐ Dynamic Provisioning

System Type: ☒ Open ☐ Mainframe

Multi-Tier Pool: ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Active Flash: ☐

Pool Volume Selection: ☐ Auto ☒ Manual

Drive Type/RPM:

RAID Level:

Select Pool VOLS

Total Selected Pool Volumes:

Total Selected Capacity:

Pool Name:

(Max. 32 Characters)

Options

Initial Pool ID:

(0-127)

Subscription Limit:

(0-65534, or blank for "Unlimited")

Warning Threshold:

(1-100)

Depletion Threshold:

(1-100 and greater than or equal to Warning Threshold)

Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Protect V-VOLs when: ☐ Yes ☒ No

Add >

**Selected Pools**

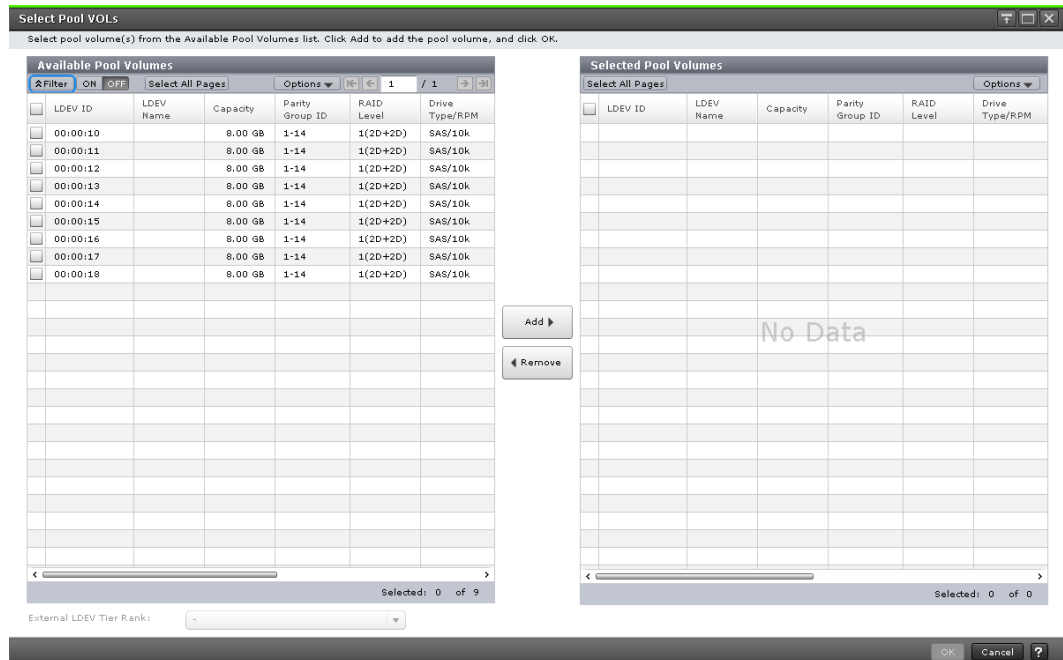
Select All Pages Options

| Pool Name (ID) | RAID Level | Capacity | Pool Type | Drive Type/RPM | Us |
|----------------|------------|----------|-----------|----------------|----|
| No Data        |            |          |           |                |    |

Detail Remove Selected: 0 of 0

Next Task Option: Continue to Create LDEVs < Back Next > Finish Cancel ?

2. In the **Create Pools** window of the **Create Pools** wizard, in the **Pool Volume Selection** section, click **Select Pool VOLs**.



3. In the **Select Pool VOLS** window, from the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select the pool-VOL you want to add to the pool, and then click **Add**.  
The pool-VOL is added to the **Selected Pool Volumes** table.
4. Click **OK**.  
The selected pool-VOL is shown in the **Selected Pools** table in the **Create Pools** window.

## Pool creation and data drive type priority

Creating pools automatically sets the new pool-VOL with system area according to the priority of data drive types.

The following table shows the priority of pool-VOLs with system area when creating pools.

| Priority | Data drive type |
|----------|-----------------|
| 1        | SAS7 2K         |
| 2        | SAS10K          |
| 3        | SAS15K          |
| 4        | SSD             |
| 5        | External volume |

If more than one pool-VOL of the same data drive type exists in the storage system, the pool-VOL priority is determined according to the storage system's internal index information.

#### Related references

- [Thin Image volume requirements](#) on page 56

## Workflow for registering virtual volumes

Use this workflow to register virtual volumes.

1. (Optional) (VSP G1000 only) Edit the SSID of the V-VOL you want to register to the pool-VOL's paired volume (see [Editing the SSID for virtual volumes on page 75](#)).
2. (Optional) Change the V-VOL settings (see [Changing LDEV settings on page 79](#)).
3. Register the V-VOL (see [Creating LDEVs on page 82](#)).

## Editing the SSID for virtual volumes (VSP G1000 only)

Before registering a V-VOL, you may need to edit the control unit's (CU) SSID, which you use to create new LDEVs. Use the Change SSIDs window to edit a V-VOL's SSID.

#### Before you begin

The SSID must be newly allocated (SSID Changeable status is Yes.)

For more information about registering V-VOLs, see [Creating LDEVs on page 82](#).

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** window, in the **Pools** tab, click **Create LDEVs**.

**Create LDEVs**

1. Create LDEVs > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you create and provision LDEVs enter the information for LDEVs you want to create, and then click Add. Click Options to expand the LDEV settings. Click Finish to confirm the creation, or click Next if you want to add LUN paths for the LDEVs.

Provisioning Type: Basic

System Type: Open Mainframe

Emulation Type: OPEN-V

Parity Group Selection:

Drive Type/RPM: SAS/15k

RAID Level: 5(3D+1P)

Select Free Spaces

Total Selected Free Spaces: 0

Total Selected Free Space Capacity: 0.00 MB

LDEV Capacity: Offset boundary (0-0) GB

Number of LDEVs per Free Space: (0-0)

LDEV Name: Prefix Initial Number (Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)

Format Type: Quick Format

Options

Initial LDEV ID: LDEV ID: LDEV ID

**Selected LDEVs**

Select All Pages Options

| LDEV ID | LDEV Name | Parity Group ID | Drive Type/RPM | RAID Level | Emula Type |
|---------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|------------|------------|
| No Data |           |                 |                |            |            |

Add

Edit SSIDs Change LDEV Settings Remove Selected: 0 of 0

Next Task Option : Continue to Add LUN Paths Back Next Finish Cancel ?

3. In the **Create LDEVs** window of the **Create LDEVs** wizard, in the **Selected LDEVs** table, click **Edit SSIDs**.

Edit SSIDs

Select changeable SSIDs from the list and click Change SSIDs to change them.

SSIDs

Filter

ON

OFF

Select All Pages

|                          | LDKC | CU | LDEV Boundary | SSID | SSID Changeable |  |
|--------------------------|------|----|---------------|------|-----------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 00 | 00-3F         | 0004 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 00 | 40-7F         | 0005 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 00 | 80-BF         | 0006 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 00 | C0-FF         | 0007 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 01 | 00-3F         | 0008 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 01 | 40-7F         | 0009 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 01 | 80-BF         | 000A | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 01 | C0-FF         | 000B | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 02 | 00-3F         | 000C | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 02 | 40-7F         | 000D | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 02 | 80-BF         | 000E | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 02 | C0-FF         | 000F | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 03 | 00-3F         | 0010 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 03 | 40-7F         | 0011 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 03 | 80-BF         | 0012 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 03 | C0-FF         | 0013 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 04 | 00-3F         | 0014 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 04 | 40-7F         | 0015 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 04 | 80-BF         | 0016 | No              |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00   | 04 | C0-FF         | 0017 | No              |  |

Change SSIDs

Selected: 0 of 1020

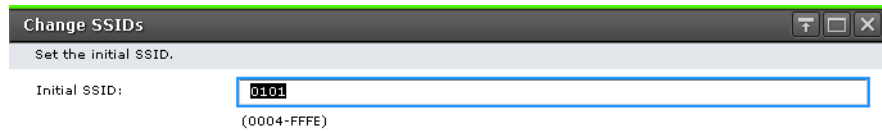
OK

Cancel

?

In the **Edit SSIDs** window, in the **SSIDs** table, existing SSIDs and those to be generated are shown in the list.

4. In the **Edit SSIDs** window, select the row of the SSID you want to edit, and then click **Change SSIDs**.



5. In the **Change SSIDs** window, for **Initial SSID**, enter the new SSID and click **OK**.
6. In the **Edit SSIDs** window, click **OK**.

- 7.** Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.

Create LDEVs

1. Create LDEVs

2. Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name:  (Max. 32 Characters)

| Selected LDEVs |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|------------|----------------|----------|-------------------|-------------|
| LDEV ID        | LDEV Name | Parity Group ID | Drive Type/RPM | RAID Level | Emulation Type | Capacity | Provisioning Type | Format Type |
| 00:00:14       |           | 1-1             | SAS/10k        | 5(7D+1P)   | OPEN-V CVS     | 12.00 GB | Basic             | Quick       |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|                |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |

<

>

Total: 1

☐ Go to tasks window for status
 

Back

Next

Apply

Cancel

?

- Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
- If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
- Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Related tasks

- [Monitoring pool information](#) on page 139

## Related references

- Replication window on page 190

## Changing LDEV settings

You can edit the V-VOL settings before registering a V-VOL.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.

- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** window, in the **Pools** tab, click **Create LDEVs**.

**Create LDEVs**

1. Create LDEVs > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you create and provision LDEVs: enter the information for LDEVs you want to create, and then click Add. Click Options to expand the LDEV settings. Click Finish to confirm the creation, or click Next if you want to add LUN paths for the LDEVs.

Provisioning Type: **Basic**

System Type: ☒ Open ☐ Mainframe

Emulation Type: **OPEN-V**

Parity Group Selection:

Drive Type/RPM: **SAS/15k**

RAID Level: **5(3D+1P)**

Select Free Spaces

Total Selected Free Spaces: 0

Total Selected Free Space Capacity: 0.00 MB

LDEV Capacity: ☐ Offset boundary

(0-0) **GB**

Number of LDEVs per Free Space: (0-0)

LDEV Name: Prefix Initial Number

(Max: 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)

Format Type: **Quick Format**

[Options](#)

Initial LDEV ID: LDEV ID LUN ID LUN ID LUN ID

**Selected LDEVs**

Select All Pages Options

| <input type="checkbox"/> | LDEV ID | LDEV Name | Parity Group ID | Drive Type/RPM | RAID Level | Emulation Type |
|--------------------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|------------|----------------|
| No Data                  |         |           |                 |                |            |                |

Add

Edit SSIDs Change LDEV Settings Remove Selected: 0 of 0

Next Task Option: Continue to Add LUN Paths Back Next Finish Cancel ?



3. In the **Create LDEVs** window of the **Create LDEVs** wizard, in the **Selected LDEVs** table, select an LDEV, and then click **Change LDEV Settings**.

4. In the **Change LDEV Settings** window, complete the following items, and then click **OK**:
  - **LDEV Name**  
Enter the prefix characters and the initial number for the LDEV.
  - **Initial LDEV ID**  
Enter the LDKC, CU, and LDEV numbers, and the interval. To confirm used LDEVs, click **View LDEV IDs**.
  - **MP Blade** (VSP G1000 models only)  
Select the MP blade identifier to which you want to assign the LDEV. To specify an MP blade identifier, select the MP blade ID. To assign an arbitrary MP blade identifier, click **Auto**.
  - **MP Unit ID** (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only)  
Select the MP Unit ID to which you want to assign the LDEV. To specify an MP Unit ID, select the MP Unit ID. To assign an arbitrary MP Unit ID, click **Auto**. The MP Unit ID that you can select depends on the storage system model.
5. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.

6. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
\\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
7. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
8. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Creating LDEVs

Creating an LDEV changes the V-VOL to the pool-VOL's paired volume and creates an open system volume. You register the V-VOLs as part of creating a V-VOL. While creating an LDEV, you can use HDP to assign pool-VOLs to one or more parity groups.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** window, in the **Pools** tab, click **Create LDEVs**.

3. In the **Create LDEVs** window of the **Create LDEVs** wizard, complete or review the following items, and then click **Options**:
  - **Provisioning Type**  
Confirm that **Snapshot** is selected.  
Required: Yes
  - **System Type**  
Verify that **Open** is selected.  
Values: **Open** or **Mainframe**  
Default: **Open**  
Required: Yes
  - **Emulation Type**  
Confirm that **OPEN-V** is selected.  
Required: Yes
  - **Offset boundary**  
Specify if you want to offset the specified LDEV capacity by boundary.  
Values: **ON** or **OFF**  
Default: **OFF**
  - **LDEV Capacity**  
Complete the following:
    - Enter the amount of the LDEV capacity you want to create. You can enter values up to two decimal places.
    - Click the unit capacity menu to choose the capacity unit, TB, GB, MB, or block.

- **Number of LDEVs**

Enter the number of LDEVs you want to create.

Range: (Shown below the text box.)

Required: Yes

- **LDEV Name**

Enter a name for the V-VOL.

- For **Prefix**, enter the case-sensitive alphanumeric characters, which become the fixed characters that precede the V-VOL number.

- For **Initial Number**, enter the initial number for V-VOL, up to 9 digits or 32 characters.

4. In the **Create LDEVs** window of the **Create LDEVs** wizard, complete the following additional items, and then click **Add**:

- **Initial LDEV ID**

Confirm that an LDEV identification number has been set. To confirm the used number and unavailable number, complete the following steps:

- a. Click **View LDEV IDs**.

- b. In the **View LDEV IDs** window, confirm the LDEV ID, and then click **Close**.

- **Initial SSID**

Enter a 4-digit representation of a hexadecimal number.

Range: 0004 to FFFE

Default: 0004

- Complete the following steps to confirm generated SSIDs:

- a. Click **View SSIDs**.

- b. In the **View SSIDs** window, confirm the SSID, and then click **Close**.

- **CLPR**

Select **CLPR**.

Required: No

- **MP Blade** (VSP G1000 models only)

Select the MP blade identifier to which you want to assign the LDEV. To specify an MP blade identifier, select the MP blade ID. To assign an arbitrary MP blade identifier, click **Auto**.

Required: No


- **MP Unit ID** (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only)

Select the MP Unit ID to which you want to assign the LDEV. To specify an MP Unit ID, select the MP Unit ID. To assign an arbitrary MP Unit ID, click **Auto**. The MP Unit ID that you can select depends on the VSP storage system model.

Required: No

The created LDEVs are added to the **Selected LDEVs** table.

5. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.



**Note:** To continue setting the LU path and define LUN, click **Next**.

For more information about setting the LU path, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

Create LDEVs

1. Create LDEVs > 2. Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name:   
(Max. 32 Characters)

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Parity Group ID | Drive Type/RPM | RAID Level | Emulation Type | Capacity | Provisioning Type | Format Type |
|----------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|------------|----------------|----------|-------------------|-------------|
| 00:00:14 |           | 1-1             | SAS/10k        | 5(7D+1P)   | OPEN-V CVS     | 12.00 GB | Basic             | Quick       |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |
|          |           |                 |                |            |                |          |                   |             |

Total: 1

☐ Go to tasks window for status

Back

Next

Apply

Cancel

?

6. (Optional) To change the settings of the V-VOLs, you can complete the following:
  - a. (VSP G1000 only) To select a storage system identifier and edit the SSID properties, click **Edit SSIDs**.
  - b. To change the LDEV settings, click **Change LDEV Settings**.

- c. In the **Change LDEV Settings** window, change the desired settings, and then click **OK**:
  - d. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
7. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  

$$\backslash / : , ; * ? " < > |$$
8. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
9. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related references

- [Sharing Thin Image volumes with Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe in a single storage system](#) on page 51

## Removing LDEVs from registering tasks

The LDEVs that are shown in the Selected LDEVs table in the **Create LDEVs** window are those that are set to be registered and created. You can choose to not register the LDEV by removing the LDEV from the registering task.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** window, click **Create LDEVs**.

3. In the **Create LDEVs** window, in the **Selected LDEVs** table, complete the following:
  - a. Select the check box for the LDEV you want to remove from the registering task, and then click **Remove**.
  - b. In the warning message that appears, click **OK** to confirm that you want to remove the selected LDEV.





4. Complete one of the following:
  - Boot or reboot the host server.
  - Run the command for recognizing devices.

#### **Related references**

- [Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 96
- [Snapshot data storage methods](#) on page 103

### **Host server stoppages and device recognition issues**

If you boot or reboot host servers, such as HP-UX or Solaris, or if you use the host server to run the read command on a V-VOL to recognize a device, keep the following items in mind.

- You cannot change the volume of the device recognized by the host server to a V-VOL.
- Before booting or rebooting the host server or running the command for recognizing devices, complete the following:
  1. Create the Thin Image pair.
  2. Store the snapshot data.
  3. Ensure the V-VOL pair recognized by the host server is in "PSUS" status.

If you do not fulfill all of the conditions listed above, the devices may not be recognized, or failures can occur and the host server can stop.

If you booted or rebooted host servers, or if you used the host server to run the commands to recognize devices and the host server was stopped, use the following workflow to run the commands:

1. Stop the process of the command and those of its parent process.
2. Create the Thin Image pair.
3. Store the snapshot data.
4. Rerun the command to recognize devices.

On the server (including CCI), the emulation type of the V-VOL is shown with a zero (0), such as OPEN-0V. If you create a Thin Image pair, specify a volume whose emulation type is shown with a zero (0) for the S-VOL, such as OPEN-0V.

## **Overview of using CCI to run commands through in-band connections**

Use CCI to run commands through an in-band connection to perform Thin Image tasks. To run the command through an in-band connection, reserve a volume for use as a command device.

If you use CCI to run commands through an out-of-band connection, you do not need to reserve a volume.



**Caution:** For maximum host I/O performance, use CCI to run commands through an in-band connection.

---

For more information about reserving a volume for use as a command device, see the *Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide*.

For more information about CCI commands that correspond to actions in the HDvM - SN GUI, see [CCI command reference for Thin Image on page 177](#).

## Changing system options that affect Thin Image performance

You can set the system options that affect Thin Image performance on the **Edit Local Replica Options** window of the **Edit Local Replica Options** wizard.

You can access this window from the **Replication** or **Local Replication** windows. This task shows how to access the **Edit Local Replica Options** window from the **Replication** window.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Replication Dashboard**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Replication**.

2. In the **Replication** window, click **Edit Options > Local Replication**.

**Edit Local Replica Options**

1. Edit Local Replica Options > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you edit system options. Select the system options you want to edit in the System Options list and click Enable or Disable. Click Finish to confirm.

System Type: ☒ Open ☐ Mainframe

| System Option          | Status   |
|------------------------|----------|
| Swap & Freeze          | Disabled |
| HOST I/O Performance   | Disabled |
| Reserve03              | Disabled |
| Reserve04              | Disabled |
| Reserve05              | Disabled |
| Reserve06              | Disabled |
| Reserve07              | Disabled |
| Reserve08              | Disabled |
| Reserve09              | Disabled |
| Reserve10              | Disabled |
| Reserve11              | Disabled |
| Reserve12              | Disabled |
| Reserve13              | Disabled |
| Reserve14              | Disabled |
| Reserve15              | Disabled |
| Reserve16              | Disabled |
| Reserve17              | Disabled |
| Reserve18              | Disabled |
| Reserve19              | Disabled |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower1 | Disabled |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower2 | Disabled |
| Copy Pace Ext. None    | Disabled |
| Reserve23              | Disabled |
| Reserve24              | Disabled |

Enable Disable Selected: 0 of 32

Back Next Finish Cancel ?

3. (VSP G1000 only) In the **Edit Local Replica Options** window of the **Edit Local Replica Options** wizard, for **System Type**, confirm that **Open** is selected.  
Default: Open

4. In the **SI/TI System Options** table, select the system option you want to change, and then click **Enable** or **Disable**.

**Edit Local Replica Options**

1. Edit Local Replica Options > 2. Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name:  (Max. 32 Characters)

| System Option          | Status   |
|------------------------|----------|
| Swap & Freeze          | Disabled |
| HOST I/O Performance   | Disabled |
| Reserve03              | Disabled |
| Reserve04              | Disabled |
| Reserve05              | Disabled |
| Reserve06              | Disabled |
| Reserve07              | Disabled |
| Reserve08              | Disabled |
| Reserve09              | Disabled |
| Reserve10              | Disabled |
| Reserve11              | Disabled |
| Reserve12              | Disabled |
| Reserve13              | Disabled |
| Reserve14              | Disabled |
| Reserve15              | Disabled |
| Reserve16              | Disabled |
| Reserve17              | Disabled |
| Reserve18              | Disabled |
| Reserve19              | Disabled |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower1 | Disabled |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower2 | Disabled |
| Copy Pace Ext. None    | Disabled |
| Reserve23              | Disabled |
| Reserve24              | Disabled |

Total: 32

☐ Go to tasks window for status

Back Next Apply Cancel ?

5. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
6. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 \ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
7. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
8. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Managing Thin Image Pairs

This chapter provides instructions for completing Thin Image pair user tasks using HDvM - SN.

- ☐ [Thin Image pair tasks](#)
- ☐ [Checking Thin Image pair status](#)
- ☐ [Reloading Thin Image configuration information](#)
- ☐ [Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs](#)
- ☐ [Workflow for creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#)
- ☐ [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#)
- ☐ [Example of creating complex Thin Image pairs](#)
- ☐ [Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI](#)
- ☐ [Workflow for defining Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#)
- ☐ [Snapshot data storage methods](#)
- ☐ [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data](#)
- ☐ [Workflow for splitting Thin Image pairs in consistency groups](#)
- ☐ [Restoring Thin Image pairs](#)
- ☐ [Thin Image pair resynchronization](#)

- ☐ [Assigning MU numbers to deleted snapshot data](#)
- ☐ [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#)
- ☐ [Assigning secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data](#)
- ☐ [Releasing assignment of secondary volumes from Thin Image pair snapshot data](#)
- ☐ [Changing assignment of secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data](#)

## Thin Image pair tasks

You can perform the following tasks on Thin Image pairs.

- Check Thin Image pair status.
- Create Thin Image pairs.
- Split Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data.
- Change the Thin Image pair status, if the pair is defined in a consistency group.
- Restore Thin Image pairs.
- Restore suspended Thin Image pairs, if the storage system suspends the pair ("PSUE" status) while you are restoring the pair.
- Resynchronize Thin Image pairs.
- Delete Thin Image pairs.

### Related concepts

- [Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 96
- [Workflow for creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 96
- [Workflow for splitting Thin Image pairs in consistency groups](#) on page 105
- [Workflow for defining Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 103

### Related tasks

- [Checking Thin Image pair status](#) on page 95
- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97
- [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data](#) on page 104
- [Restoring Thin Image pairs](#) on page 108
- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111
- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113

## Checking Thin Image pair status

Each Thin Image pair task requires a pair to have a specific status.

Check the pairs' status before performing a pair task, to ensure that the task completes successfully, and to ensure that the data is current.

### Procedure

1. Click **Refresh**.

## Reloading Thin Image configuration information

After creating a Thin Image pair, you can reload the configuration information if data shown in windows are different.

For example, the number of pairs shown in the summary section in the **Local Replication** window and the number of pairs shown in the list in the TI Primary Volumes tab can be different.

### Procedure

1. Wait until the configuration information has completed processing.
2. If the numbers remain different, click **File > Refresh All**.

## Workflow for creating and managing Thin Image pairs

Use this workflow to create and manage a Thin Image pair.

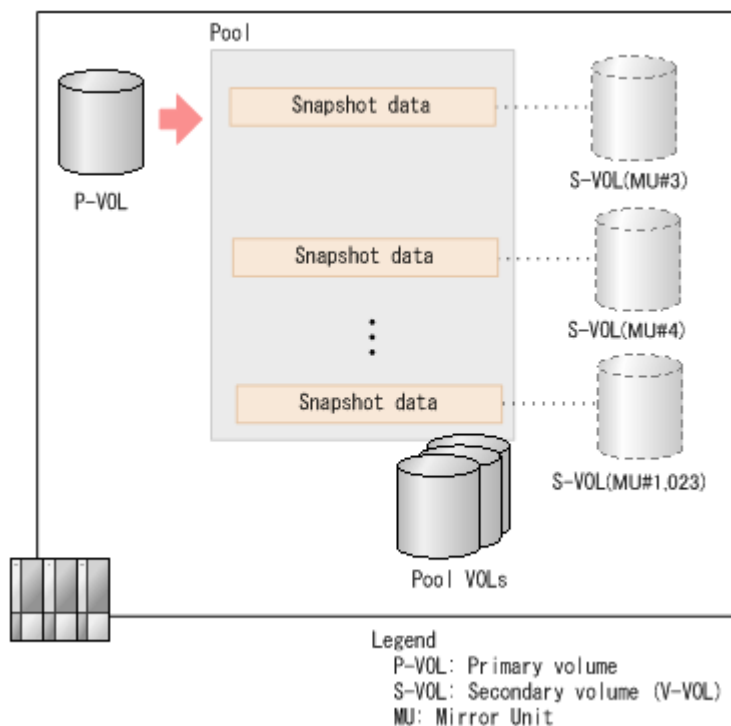
1. Create the data pool (see [Creating Thin Image data pools on page 69](#)).
2. Create the V-VOL for the pair (see [Creating LDEVs on page 82](#)).
3. Check the pair status (see [Checking Thin Image pair status on page 95](#)).
4. Create the Thin Image pair in one of the following ways.
  - Create the pair using HDvM - SN.  
For more information about how to create HTI pairs using HDvM - SN, see [Workflow for creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator on page 96](#).
  - Create the pair using CCI and assign the pair to a snapshot group.  
For more information about how to create Thin Image pairs using CCI, see [Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI on page 102](#).
5. If you have assigned the pairs to a consistency group, split the Thin Image pair using the consistency group to store snapshot data.
6. Delete the snapshot data in one of the following ways.
  - Delete the Thin Image pairs (see [Deleting Thin Image pairs on page 113](#)).
  - Delete only the snapshot data (see [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs on page 111](#)).

## Workflow for creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator

The pairs shown in the HDvM - SN main window are configured based on the amount of snapshot data corresponding to the P-VOL, or the number of S-VOLs that are assigned to snapshot data corresponding to the P-VOL.

The following image shows this configuration.





Creating Thin Image pairs using HDvM - SN involves the following steps.

1. Select the P-VOL.
2. Assign the S-VOL to snapshot data.
3. Confirm that you want to create the pair.

#### Related tasks

- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97

## Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator

You can create a Thin Image pair and define the pair in a consistency group. You can create a maximum of 1,024 Thin Image pairs at the same time for VSP G1000, and 32,768 for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800. To create more than 1,024 (or 32,768) pairs, repeat this task.

When you create a pair, you specify the pool to be used. A Thin Image pair consists of a P-VOL and up to 1,024 S-VOLs. The MU numbers are assigned in the order of 3 to 1,023, followed by 0 to 2.



**Note:** After creating a Thin Image pair, the number of pairs shown in the summary section in the **Local Replication** window and the number of pairs

shown in the list in the TI Pairs tab can be different. Wait until the configuration information has completed processing. If the numbers of pairs do not match, reload the configuration information (see [Reloading Thin Image configuration information on page 96](#)).



**Caution:** To prevent the Thin Image pair from being suspended ("PSUE" status), do not create Thin Image pairs while you are shutting down the storage system.

#### Requirements:

- The P-VOL and S-VOLs you select must be the same size in blocks, if you create a Thin Image pair with an S-VOL specified. If the capacity is displayed in GB or TB, a small difference between P-VOL and S-VOL capacity might not be displayed.  
To view the capacity in blocks, click Options > Capacity Unit > block in the **Logical Devices** window.
- If you select a P-VOL that you are already using as the P-VOL for another Thin Image pair, you must specify the same pool for both pairs. For example, if you specify three S-VOLs for one P-VOL, specify the same pool for the three Thin Image pairs.
- (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The value of the T10 PI attribute must be the same for the P-VOL and S-VOL.

#### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.
- If you are sharing ShadowImage volumes with Thin Image volumes, the SI pair exists.
- If you want to use a ShadowImage volume as a Thin Image P-VOL when an available MU number does not exist, you have completed the following:
  1. Deleted the Thin Image pairs of MU numbers 0 to 2.
  2. Created the ShadowImage pair.
  3. Recreated the Thin Image pair with an MU number of 3 or greater assigned.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Create TI Pairs** wizard.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.
- c. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab, and then click **Create TI Pairs**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
  - b. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab, and then click **Create TI Pairs**.
2. In **Use Primary Volumes of Thin Image Pairs**, select **Yes** or **No**.  
For **Yes**, continue to the next step. For **No**, complete the following:
- a. From the **Available Primary Volumes** table, select the LDEV you want to assign as the P-VOL.



**Note:** (VSP G1000 only) Nondisruptive migration volumes do not appear in the **Available Primary Volumes** table.

---

- b. Click **Select Pool**.
  - c. In the **Select Pool** window, select a pool from the **Available Pools** table.
  - d. Click **OK**.
3. For **Snapshot Group**, select either **Create New** to assign the pair to a new snapshot group, or **Use Existing** to assign the pair to an existing snapshot group. When you create a Thin Image pair, you must assign it to a snapshot group.

Complete one of the following:

- For **Create New**, enter values for **Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume**, **Prefix**, and **Initial Number**, and then select **Snapshot Group Configuration**.
- For **Use Existing**, select **Snapshot Group Configuration**, and then select the snapshot group to which you want to assign the pair from the **Available Snapshot Groups** table. If you select **All**, enter a value in **Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume**.



**Note:** To create pairs and assign the pairs to a snapshot group by using CCI, see [Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI on page 102](#).

---

4. Click **Add**.  
The selected LDEV is moved to the **Selected Primary Volumes** table.
5. Click **Next**.
6. From the **Available LDEVs** table, select the LDEV you want to assign as the S-VOL, and then click **Set**.  
The selected LDEV is displayed in the **Secondary Volumes** column of the **Selected Pairs** table.



**Note:**

- (VSP G1000 only) Nondisruptive migration volumes do not appear in the **Available Primary Volumes** table.
  - If you select a capacity in **Capacity**, the **Available LDEVs** and **Selected Pairs** tables display the LDEVs that match the selected capacity.
  - If you select a row in the **Available LDEVs** table and a row in the **Selected Pairs** table, and then click **Set**, you can configure a pair.
  - If you select LDEVs which were assigned to an S-VOL with the **Exclude Assigned Volumes** check box unchecked, you can change the S-VOL to which snapshot data is assigned.
- 

7. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
8. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:

\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |

9. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
10. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related concepts

- [Workflow for creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 96

#### Related tasks

- [Simultaneous processing of multiple Thin Image pair tasks](#) on page 65
- [Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI](#) on page 102
- [Accelerating the Thin Image pair deletion process](#) on page 114

#### Related references

- [Create TI Pairs wizard](#) on page 212

## Selecting a pool as your primary volume

You select a pool when you are creating a Thin Image pair if you are not using the P-VOL of a Thin Image pair (that is, you have selected No for Use Primary Volumes of Thin Image Pairs in the Create TI Pairs window of the Create TI Pairs wizard).

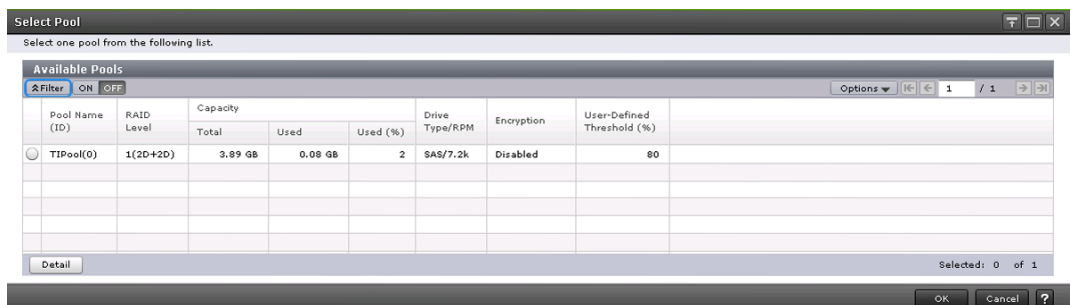
#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Create TI Pairs** wizard.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.
- c. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab, and then click **Create TI Pairs**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
  - b. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab, and then click **Create TI Pairs**.
2. In the **Create TI Pairs** window of the **Create TI Pairs** wizard, click **Select Pool**.



3. In the **Select Pool** window, from the **Available Pools** table, select the pool you want to add, and then click **OK**.  
The selected pool is displayed in **Select Pool** on the **Create TI Pairs** window.

## Example of creating complex Thin Image pairs

A complex Thin Image pair is a pair where the P-VOL and S-VOL are not connected one to one. The following is an example of how to create Thin Image pairs of different configurations simultaneously.

In this example, one pair of two S-VOLs and another pair of one S-VOL are created simultaneously. Each pair's configuration is specified in the Create TI Pairs window.

1. Select two primary volumes from the Available Primary Volumes table.
2. Click Select Pool, and then select a pool in the **Select Pool** window.
3. Select Create New in Snapshot Group.
4. Enter 1 for Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume.
5. Select Snapshot Group Configuration.

6. Enter values for Prefix and Initial Number.
7. Click Add.
8. Select Yes in Use Primary Volumes of Thin Image Pairs.
9. Select a primary volume for which you want to specify two secondary volumes from the Available Primary Volumes table.
10. Select Create New in Snapshot Group.
11. Enter 1 for Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume.
12. Select Snapshot Group Configuration.
13. Enter values for Prefix and Initial Number.
14. Click Add.
15. Click Next.
16. Select three secondary volumes in the **Assign Secondary Volumes** window, and then click Set.

## Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI

You can create pairs and define the pairs in a snapshot group or in a consistency group. Define pairs to consistency groups to perform pair tasks on all of the pairs within the group. This task describes how to do this using CCI.



**Note:** If the host is down, the CCI command might be rejected and the pair not defined in the group. In this case, you can use Device Manager - Storage Navigator to create the pair and assign it to a group.

---

### Procedure

1. Create the Thin Image pair and define the pair in a snapshot or consistency group. To do this using CCI, run the `raidcom add snapshot` command.



**Note:** Define pairs that share the same P-VOL in different snapshot groups.

---

The following is an example of using the CCI `raidcom` command to create a pair specifying the P-VOL (LDEV#10:10), the S-VOL (LDEV#20:20), the pool (SnapPool00) in the snapshot group (db1), and the consistency group (CTG):

```
raidcom add snapshot -ldev_id 0x1010 0x2020 -pool SnapPool00 -  
snapshotgroup db1 -snap_mode CTG
```

### Related tasks

- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97

### Related references

- [Thin Image consistency group requirements](#) on page 59

## Workflow for defining Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using Device Manager - Storage Navigator

If you use a CCI command to create a pair that should be a target of the consistency group pair-split, and the host is down, the CCI command might be rejected and the pair not defined in the group.

If the command is rejected, use the following process to define the pair to the consistency group:

1. View a list of the consistency groups and locate the consistency group to which you want to assign the pair.  
For more information about how to view a list of consistency groups, see [Viewing the list of consistency groups on page 132](#).
2. Create a pair and define it to a consistency group.  
For more information about how to create pairs and define them in consistency groups, see [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator on page 97](#).

### Related concepts

- [Snapshot data storage methods](#) on page 103
- [Workflow for creating groups and storing snapshot data using CCI](#) on page 25

### Related tasks

- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97

## Snapshot data storage methods

Use one of these two methods to store Thin Image snapshot data.

- Split the Thin Image pair.  
For more information about storing snapshot data by splitting pairs, see [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data on page 104](#).
- Split the Thin Image pair within the consistency group using consistency group pair-split. Complete one of the following:

- If you are not sharing Thin Image P-VOLs with Universal Replicator or TrueCopy S-VOLs within a storage system, see [Workflow for splitting Thin Image pairs in consistency groups on page 105](#).
- If you are sharing Thin Image P-VOLs with Universal Replicator or TrueCopy S-VOLs within a storage system, see [Using consistency group pair-split with shared volumes on page 106](#).

## Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data

This topic explains how to split pairs. Splitting pairs stores snapshot data.

You can store a maximum of 1,024 snapshots from a P-VOL. If you reach the maximum, delete the unneeded or unused snapshots.



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

---

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.
- The Thin Image pair status is "PAIR".

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.
 In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the pair you want to split and then click **Split Pairs**.
5. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
6. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 \ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
7. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.



8. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related tasks

- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111

#### Related references

- [Split Pairs wizard](#) on page 225

## Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data using CCI

Contain only Thin Image pairs that are either assigned to consistency groups or pairs that are not assigned to consistency groups in a group defined by the configuration definition file for CCI.

To specify more than one consistency group, define the same number of groups using the configuration definition file for CCI.

#### Procedure

1. Run the CCI `pairsplit` command.

## Workflow for splitting Thin Image pairs in consistency groups

You can split pairs to store snapshot data for a consistency group. This process explains how to use CCI's consistency group pair-split to split the pairs.

Use the following process to split Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data:

1. (If the pairs are not created) Create two Thin Image pairs and assign both pairs to the same consistency group. To do this, using CCI, run the following `raidcom` command twice using an option to specify the consistency group ID:  

```
raidcom add snapshot
```

A pair is created and defined in a consistency group. This group is the target of the consistency group pair-split. The consistency group ID option you specified automatically enables the consistency group pair-split.
2. Create the pair to store snapshot data for a group. To do this, using CCI, run the following `raidcom` command:  

```
raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create
```
3. The storage system receives the command and stores the snapshot data for the consistency group that is the target of the consistency group pair-split.
4. A host issues a write request to the Thin Image pair's P-VOL that is assigned to the consistency group.
5. The pairs are split and the snapshot data is stored.

## Related concepts

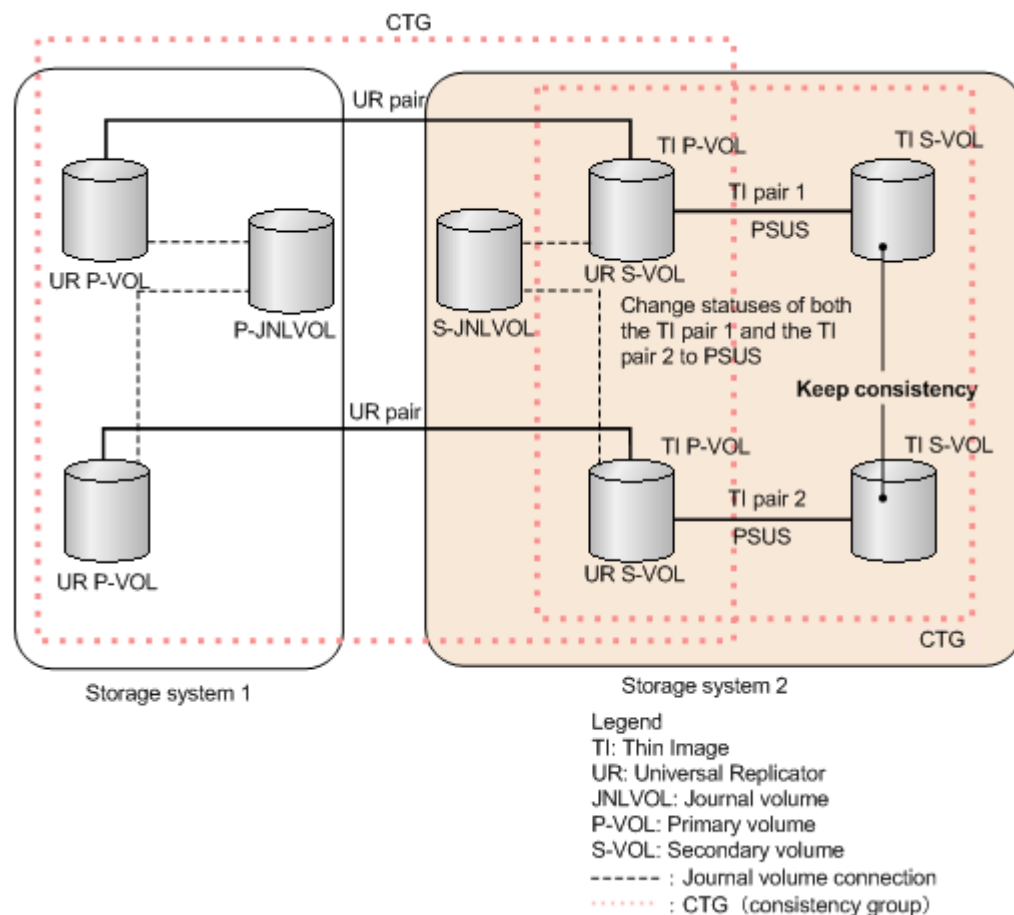
- [Workflow for defining Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 103
- [Notes on acquiring snapshot data](#) on page 187

## Using consistency group pair-split with shared volumes

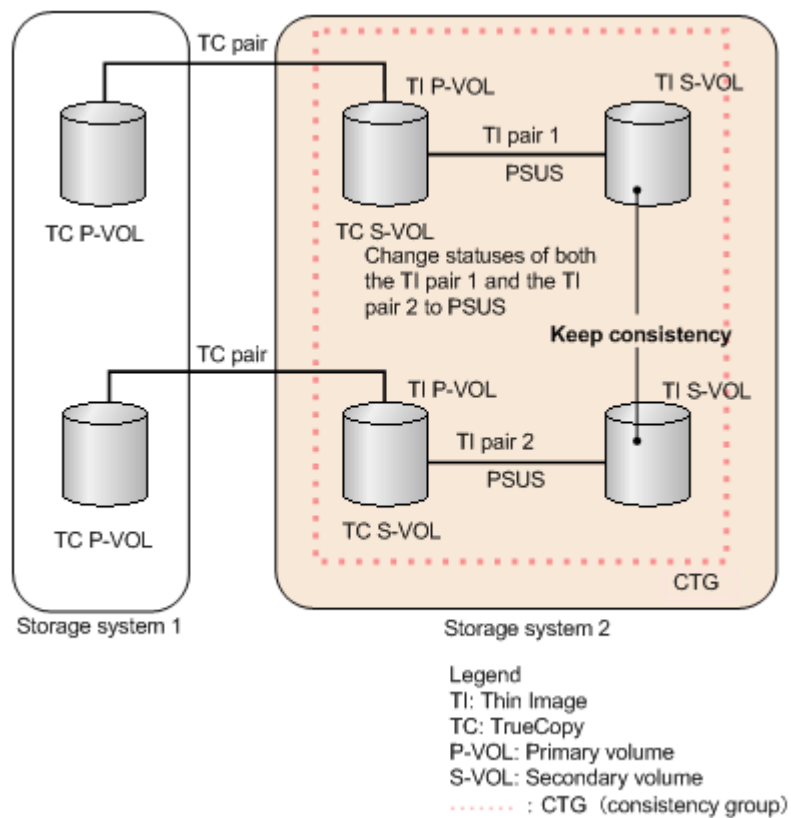
If you are sharing Thin Image P-VOLs with ShadowImage, Universal Replicator, or TrueCopy S-VOLs within a storage system, you can use consistency group pair-split to split the pairs that are defined in a consistency group to store the snapshot data. Consistency group pair-split maintains consistency for the Thin Image S-VOLs that are defined in the consistency group.

The following figures illustrate these configurations.

The following figure shows the consistency group pair-split configuration when you are sharing Thin Image P-VOLs with Universal Replicator S-VOLs.



The following figure show the consistency group pair-split configuration when sharing Thin Image P-VOLs with TrueCopy S-VOLs.



The following table explains when you can use consistency group pair-split with shared volumes.

| HTI P-VOL used as | Pair status | Can you use consistency group pair-split? |
|-------------------|-------------|---|
| UR S-VOL          | COPY        | No  |
|                   | PAIR        | Yes                                       |
|                   | PSUS        | Yes                                       |
| TC S-VOL          | COPY        | No  |
|                   | PAIR        | Yes                                       |
|                   | PSUS        | Yes                                       |
| SI S-VOL          | COPY        | No  |
|                   | PAIR        | No  |
|                   | COPY(SP)    | No  |
|                   | PSUS(SP)    | No  |
|                   | PSUS        | Yes                                       |
|                   | COPY(RS)    | No  |
|                   | COPY(RS-R)  | No  |

| HTI P-VOL used as | Pair status | Can you use consistency group pair-split? |
|-------------------|-------------|---|
|                   | PSUE        | No  |

You cannot maintain the consistency of Thin Image S-VOLs that are defined in a consistency group in the following cases:

- You are sharing a Thin Image P-VOL with ShadowImage, TrueCopy, or Universal Replicator S-VOLs, and the statuses of those pairs are not the same.
- You are sharing a Thin Image P-VOL with a Universal Replicator S-VOL and they do not share the same journal.

For more information about Universal Replicator, see the *Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide*.

#### Related concepts

- [Notes on acquiring snapshot data](#) on page 187

## Restoring Thin Image pairs

Restoring a Thin Image pair overwrites the existing P-VOL data with the differential data on the S-VOL.

Restoration of a Thin Image pair may end abnormally in either of the following conditions:

- You are storing snapshot data for a consistency group that already includes the pair.
- You are using the P-VOL of the pair as the P-VOL of another Thin Image pair and you are storing snapshot data for a consistency group including the latter pair.



**Caution:** Failures can occur while restoring Thin Image pairs, which suspends the pairs ("PSUE" status).

For more information about restoring suspended Thin Image pairs, see [Restoring suspended Thin Image pairs on page 110](#).

The amount of time required for restoration depends on the following, even if the pair synchronization rate is 100 percent:

- The amount of capacity the pool is using.
- The number of pairs being resynchronized concurrently.



**Note:** The pair synchronization rate may not change when you view the rate while restoring the Thin Image pair. To view the up-to-date rate, wait until the task has completed.

For more information about monitoring the pair synchronization rates, see [Viewing pair synchronization rates on page 128](#).

---



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

---

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.
- The Thin Image pair is split ("PSUS" status).

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the pairs you want to resynchronize, and then click **Resync Pairs**.
5. For **Resync Type**, select **Reverse Copy (Secondary > Primary)** for a full restoration of P-VOL data from the S-VOL.
6. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
7. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
\\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
8. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
9. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

### Result

The Thin Image pair is restored ("PAIR" status).

### Related concepts

- [Thin Image pair restoration](#) on page 29

### Related tasks

- [Simultaneous processing of multiple Thin Image pair tasks](#) on page 65

### Related references

- [Resync Pairs wizard](#) on page 228

## Failure during Thin Image pair restore

If a failure occurs while restoring Thin Image pairs, the pairs are suspended.

During a failure, the storage system does the following:

- Blocks and suspends the Thin Image pair ("PSUE" status), including pairs that have snapshot data in the pool.
- Writes data to the Thin Image pair volumes.
- Exceeds the data pool capacity of snapshot data.

If a failure occurs, delete the unneeded snapshot data by restoring the suspended pairs.

## Restoring suspended Thin Image pairs

When pairs are suspended ("PSUE" status) after a failure occurs, they need to be restored.



**Note:** You can only restore one Thin Image pair at a time.

---

### Procedure

1. Delete the snapshot data by resynchronizing the pair.
2. Complete one of the following:
  - Overwrite the backup data to the P-VOL.
  - Format the P-VOL.

For more information about overwriting backup data to the P-VOL or formatting LDEVs, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

### Related tasks

- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111

## Thin Image pair resynchronization

Resynchronizing a Thin Image pair updates the S-VOL with the differential data and deletes the replaced data, the data in the pool. Resynchronizing a pair maintains the relationship between the P-VOL and S-VOLs.

The amount of time required for resynchronization depends on the following, even if the pair resynchronization rate is 100 percent:

- The amount of capacity the pool is using.

- The number of pairs being resynchronized concurrently.

## Pair resynchronization methods

You can forward or reverse resynchronize Thin Image pairs. A forward resynchronization resynchronizes the S-VOL from the P-VOL. A reverse resynchronization restores the P-VOL from the S-VOL.

### Forward resynchronization

You can use the Normal Copy (Primary > Secondary) method to forward resynchronize pairs.

This method performs a full forward resynchronization of data from the P-VOL to the S-VOL. The differential data is copied to the S-VOL.

### Reverse resynchronization

You can use the Reverse Copy (Secondary > Primary) method to restore pairs.

This method performs a full restoration of P-VOL data from the S-VOL.

## Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs

You can resynchronize Thin Image pairs that you have split or that the storage system has suspended.

Resynchronizing pairs does the following:

- Updates the S-VOL so that it is again paired with the P-VOL.
- Frees up the P-VOL's snapshot differential data for that P-VOL to reuse.



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

---

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.

2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the pair you want to resynchronize, and then click **Resync Pairs**.
5. For **Resync Type**, select **Normal Copy (Primary > Secondary)** for full forward resynchronization of data from the P-VOL to the S-VOL.
6. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
7. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
8. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
9. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

### Result

The Thin Image pair is resynchronized ("PAIR" status).

### Related concepts

- [Workflow for creating groups and storing snapshot data using CCI](#) on page 25

### Related tasks

- [Simultaneous processing of multiple Thin Image pair tasks](#) on page 65
- [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data](#) on page 104

### Related references

- [Resync Pairs wizard](#) on page 228

## Assigning MU numbers to deleted snapshot data

Use this process to assign an MU number to deleted snapshot data.

### Procedure

1. Resynchronize the pair using forward resynchronization.
2. Store the data for the Thin Image pair.

### Related concepts

- [Snapshot data storage methods](#) on page 103

### Related tasks

- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111



## Deleting Thin Image pairs

Delete Thin Image pairs when you no longer need them or when you want to delete snapshot data.

Deleting pairs deletes snapshot data from the pool and cancels the relationship between the P-VOL and S-VOLs. You can use the unpaired P-VOL and S-VOLs in another pair.

All snapshot data in a P-VOL must be deleted for there to be a decrease in the pool usage rate and an increase in unused capacity.

The amount of time required for resynchronization depends on the following, even if the pair resynchronization rate is 100 percent:

- The amount of capacity the pool is using.
- The number of pairs being resynchronized concurrently.

For information about shortening the time that the pair is in the process of being deleted ("SMPL(PD)" status), see [Accelerating the Thin Image pair deletion process on page 114](#).



**Note:** After deleting a Thin Image pair, the number of pairs shown in the summary section in the **Local Replication** window and in the list in the TI Primary Volumes tab can be different. Wait until the configuration has completed processing. If the numbers do not match, reload the configuration information (see [Reloading Thin Image configuration information on page 96](#)).

---



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

---

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.
- The Thin Image pair is suspended ("PSUE" status), paired ("PAIR" status), or split ("PSUS" status).

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the pair you want to delete, and then click **More Actions > Delete Pairs**.
5. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
6. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
7. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
8. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

### Result

The pair deletion process begins ("SMPL(PD)" status), and then the pair is deleted.

### Related tasks

- [Simultaneous processing of multiple Thin Image pair tasks](#) on page 65
- [Recovering blocked pools](#) on page 158

## Accelerating the Thin Image pair deletion process

You can shorten the time that a Thin Image pair is in the process of being deleted ("SMPL(PD)" status). If the pair status is "SMPL(PD)", you cannot recreate a Thin Image pair, and you cannot assign an S-VOL to snapshot data, release an assignment, or change an assignment.

### Procedure

1. Delete the snapshot data by resynchronizing the pair.  
This puts the pair in "PAIR" status.
2. Delete the pair.

### Related tasks

- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111

## Removing Thin Image snapshot groups

You can remove snapshot groups by deleting all of the pairs in the group. Remove snapshot groups before performing the next pair task.



**Note:** You can use HDvM - SN only to reference consistency and snapshot groups and to remove snapshot groups. You cannot use HDvM - SN to delete consistency groups.

---

#### Procedure

1. Delete all of the Thin Image pairs that are assigned to the snapshot group.

## Assigning secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data

This section explains how to assign secondary volumes to Thin Image snapshot data.

## Assigning secondary volumes to snapshot data after creating new Thin Image pairs

You can assign an S-VOL to snapshot data after creating a new Thin Image pair.



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

---

#### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, click **Create TI Pairs**.
5. In **Use Primary Volumes of Thin Image Pairs**, select **Yes** or **No**.  
For **Yes**, continue to the next step. For **No**, complete the following:

- a. From the **Available Primary Volumes** table, select the LDEV you want to assign as the P-VOL.



**Note:** (VSP G1000 only) Nondisruptive migration volumes do not appear in the **Available Primary Volumes** table.

---

- b. Click **Select Pool**.
- c. In the **Select Pool** window, select a pool from the **Available Pools** table.
- d. Click **OK**.
6. For **Snapshot Group**, select either **Create New** to assign the pair to a new snapshot group, or **Use Existing** to assign the pair to an existing snapshot group. When you create a Thin Image pair, you must assign it to a snapshot group.

Complete one of the following:

- For **Create New**, enter values for **Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume**, **Prefix**, and **Initial Number**, and then select **Snapshot Group Configuration**.
- For **Use Existing**, select **Snapshot Group Configuration**, and then select the snapshot group to which you want to assign the pair from the **Available Snapshot Groups** table. If you select **All**, enter a value in **Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume**.



**Note:** To create pairs and assign the pairs to a snapshot group by using CCI, see [Creating Thin Image pairs and defining them in snapshot or consistency groups using CCI on page 102](#).

---

7. Click **Add**.  
The selected LDEV is moved to the **Selected Primary Volumes** table.
8. Click **Next**.
9. From the **Available LDEVs** table, select the LDEV you want to assign as the S-VOL, and then click **Set**.  
The selected LDEV is displayed in the **Secondary Volumes** column of the **Selected Pairs** table.



**Note:**

- (VSP G1000 only) Nondisruptive migration volumes do not appear in the **Available Primary Volumes** table.
  - If you select a capacity in **Capacity**, the **Available LDEVs** and **Selected Pairs** tables display the LDEVs that match the selected capacity.
  - If you select a row in the **Available LDEVs** table and a row in the **Selected Pairs** table and then click **Set**, you can configure a pair.
-

10. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
11. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
\\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
12. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
13. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related references

- [Create TI Pairs window](#) on page 213

## Assigning secondary volumes to snapshot data of existing Thin Image pairs

You can assign an S-VOL to snapshot data of an existing Thin Image pair.



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

#### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, click **More Actions > Assign Secondary Volumes**.
5. From the **Available LDEVs** table, select the LDEV you want to assign as the S-VOL, and then click **Set**.  
The selected LDEV is displayed in the **Secondary Volumes** column of the **Selected Pairs** table.

**Note:**

- (VSP G1000 only) Nondisruptive migration volumes do not appear in the **Available Primary Volumes** table.
  - If you select a capacity in **Capacity**, the **Available LDEVs** and **Selected Pairs** tables display the LDEVs that match the selected capacity.
  - If you select a row in the **Available LDEVs** table and a row in the **Selected Pairs** table and then click **Set**, you can configure a pair.
- 

6. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
7. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
\\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
8. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
9. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

**Related references**

- [Assign Secondary Volumes window](#) on page 241

## Releasing assignment of secondary volumes from Thin Image pair snapshot data

You can release the assignment of S-VOLs from snapshot data of Thin Image pairs.



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

---

**Before you begin**

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy Pair Unmap) role.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the S-VOL pairs you want to delete, and then click **More Actions > Remove Secondary Volumes**.
5. In the **Remove Secondary Volumes** window, confirm the settings.
6. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 \ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
7. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
8. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related references

- [Remove Secondary Volumes window](#) on page 247

## Changing assignment of secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data

You can change S-VOLs that are assigned to snapshot data.



**Note:** If the amount of snapshot data in selected P-VOLs or the total number of pairs in selected snapshot groups exceeds 37,768, an error message appears when attempting to perform pair tasks.

#### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.
 In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.

3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, click **More Actions > Assign Secondary Volumes**.
5. From the **Available LDEVs** table, select the LDEV you want to assign as the S-VOL, and then click **Set**.  
The selected LDEV is displayed in the **Secondary Volumes** column of the **Selected Pairs** table.



**Note:**

- (VSP G1000 only) Nondisruptive migration volumes do not appear in the **Available Primary Volumes** table.
  - If you select a capacity in **Capacity**, the **Available LDEVs** and **Selected Pairs** tables display the LDEVs that match the selected capacity.
  - If you select a row in the **Available LDEVs** table and a row in the **Selected Pairs** table and then click **Set**, you can configure a pair.
  - If you select LDEVs that were assigned to an S-VOL with the **Exclude Assigned Volumes** check box unchecked, the S-VOL to which snapshot data is assigned can be changed.
- 
6. Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
  7. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
\\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
  8. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
  9. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

**Related references**

- [Assign Secondary Volumes window](#) on page 241



# Monitoring and maintaining Thin Image

This chapter provides information and instructions for monitoring and maintaining Thin Image.

- ☐ [Monitoring pair information](#)
- ☐ [Monitoring consistency groups](#)
- ☐ [Viewing Thin Image pair task history](#)
- ☐ [Viewing licensed capacities](#)
- ☐ [Viewing the number of cache management devices](#)
- ☐ [Managing pools](#)
- ☐ [Managing virtual volumes](#)
- ☐ [Viewing snapshot data capacity \(VSP G1000 only\)](#)
- ☐ [Maintaining pairs during storage system maintenance](#)

# Monitoring pair information

## Viewing summary replication information

You can view summary replication information in the **Replication** window. This window shows the summary section at the top of the window and the Replica LDEVs tab at the bottom.

From this window you can perform the following tasks:

- Open the window from which you can view local replication summary information.
- Open the window from which you can set the system options that affect performance in Thin Image.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Replication Dashboard**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Replication**.

2. In the summary section in the **Replication** window, view the following information:

- **Licensed Capacity:** The used and licensed capacity of each software application.
- **Number of Replica LDEVs:** The number of LDEVs used for replication.
- **Number of FCv2/FCSE Relationships:** (VSP G1000 only) The number of FCv2 and FCSE relationships that are in use.
- **Number of Differential Tables:** The number of differential tables that are in use and the differential table limit in the storage system. This number does not include the number of differential tables that FCv2/FCSE Relationships use.



**Note:** Thin Image does not use differential tables.

---

3. In the **Replica LDEVs** tab, view the following information:

- **LDEV ID:** The selected LDEV's identification number. Click the ID to open the **LDEV Properties** window. Use this window to search for pool information.
- **LDEV Name:** The selected LDEV's name.
- **Emulation Type:** (VSP G1000 only) The selected LDEV's emulation type.
- **Capacity:** The selected LDEV's capacity.
- **Copy Type:** The copy type for the pair you selected.

Values:

- **TI:** HTI pair

HTI, SI, SIz, TC, TCz, UR, URz, and GAD volume status:

- **Primary:** P-VOL

- **Secondary:** S-VOL

FCv2 and FCSE volume status (VSP G1000 only):

- **S-Normal:** The source volume in the normal status. S means a source volume.

- **T-Normal:** The target volume in the normal status. T means a target volume.

- **ST-Normal:** The normal volume which is set for the source volume and the target volume.

- **S-Failed, S-Full, S-Full & Failed:** The source volume in the abnormal status.

- **T-Failed, T-Full, T-Full & Failed:** The target volume in the abnormal status.

- **ST-Failed, ST-full, ST-full & Failed:** The abnormal volume which is set for the source volume and the target volume.

If you have not configured a pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

4. (Optional) To download table information to a file, click **Export**.

#### Related tasks

- [Changing system options that affect Thin Image performance](#) on page 90
- [Viewing local replication summary information](#) on page 123
- [Viewing Thin Image pair task history](#) on page 135

#### Related references

- [Replication window](#) on page 190

## Viewing local replication summary information

You can view summary local replication information, such as the number of pairs for each software application you are using, in the summary section of the **Local Replication** window.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.

2. In the summary section of the **Local Replication** window, view the following information:

#### **Number of Pairs**

The number of pairs for each local replication software application type. The total number of pairs is shown on the **Total** line.

Default: ShadowImage, ShadowImage for Mainframe, and Thin Image

#### **Number of Consistency Groups**

The number of consistency groups that are in use and the consistency groups limit in the storage system.

#### **Snapshot Estimated Manageable Capacity**

The Thin Image pair's estimated manageable capacity, which is the estimated pair capacity that you can create using the remaining shared (or control) memory capacity. This value varies depending on the number of Thin Image P-VOLs you add or delete and the number of Thin Image pairs you create.

If the value is less than 128.00 TB, the  icon is shown.



**Note:** This value is a rough estimation and changes as you add and delete Thin Image pool-VOLs or pairs. This value does not guarantee that the Thin Image pairs of the indicated capacity have been successfully created.

---

#### **Number of Pair Tables**

The number of pair tables. This number varies depending on the combination of software applications you are using.

Values:

- SI/SIMF/Volume Migration: The number of SI, SIz, and Volume Migration pair tables in use, and the SI, SIz, and Volume Migration pair table limit in the storage system.

- HTI: The number of HTI pair tables in use and the HTI pair table limit in the storage system.

#### **Number of Differential Tables**

The number of differential tables that are in use and the differential table limit in the storage system. This number does not include the number of differential tables that FCv2/FCSE Relationships use.



**Note:** Differential tables are not used in Thin Image.

---

## Viewing the number of pairs

You can view the number of pairs.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the summary section in the **Local Replication** window, for **Number of Pairs**, view the number of pairs.

### Related concepts

- [Calculating Thin Image pairs based on the snapshot estimated manageable capacity](#) on page 61

### Related tasks

- [Viewing local replication summary information](#) on page 123

## Viewing the list of primary volumes

You can view the list of primary volumes.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.

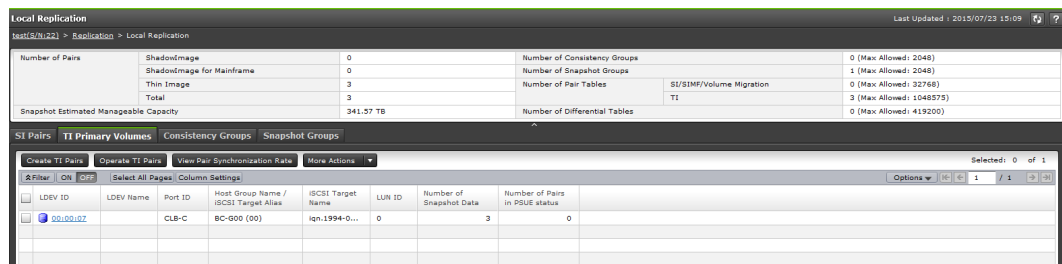
In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.

2. In the **Local Replication** window, select the **TI Primary Volumes** tab.



3. In the **TI Primary Volumes** tab, view the list of Thin Image primary volumes.

## Viewing pair properties

You can view pair properties and confirm the status of a volume in the **View Pair Properties** window.

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.
 In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the pair you want to monitor, and then click **More Actions > View Pair Properties**.

### Related references

- [View Pair Properties window](#) on page 204

## Thin Image pair status definitions

The P-VOL and V-VOL access columns in the following table indicate whether the volumes accept read/write.

For more information about the corresponding CCI pair command results, see [CCI pair command results on page 179](#).

The following table describes the Thin Image pair status definitions, the S-VOL access for the status, and the corresponding status that is shown in CCI.

| Pair status  | Description  | S-VOL access                        | Status shown in CCI                    |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| SMPL(PD)   | The pair is in the process of being deleted. You cannot perform pair tasks when the pair is in this status, and you cannot assign an S-VOL to snapshot data, release an assignment, or change an assignment.   | Read/write disabled.                | SMPL                                   |
| COPY   | The storage system has accepted the <b>paircreate</b> CCI command.<br><br>The P-VOL accepts read/write operations, but the S-VOLs do not accept read/write operations.   | Read/write disabled.                | COPY                                   |
| PAIR   | The volumes are paired.<br><br>The S-VOL does not accept read/write operations.  | Read/write disabled.                | PAIR                                   |
| PFUL   | While the volumes are paired ("PAIR" status), you exceeded the data pool threshold.  | Read/write disabled.                | PFUL                                   |
| PFUS   | While the pair is split ("PSUS" status), you exceeded the data pool threshold.   | Read/write enabled.                 | PFUS                                   |
| PSUS   | The <b>pairsplit</b> CCI command has completed. The Update Copy operation has stopped.<br><br>The S-VOL can accept read/write operations. The storage system records differential data between the P-VOL and S-VOLs so that you can immediately resynchronize the pair.  | Read/Write enabled. Can be mounted. | PSUS for P-VOLs<br><br>SSUS for S-VOLs |
| RCPY   | A Reverse Copy is in progress. The S-VOL does not accept read/write operations.* The starting time of the copy depends on the number of pairs in your storage system.<br><br>Only S-VOL differential data is copied to the P-VOL. The Update Copy operation is not performed during Reverse Copy or Quick Restore. | Read/Write disabled.                | RCPY                                   |
| PSUE   | The pair is suspended.<br><br>The S-VOL does not accept read/write operations.   | Read/Write disabled.                | PSUE                                   |
| * Starting time of the copy depends on numbers of pairs and your system environment. |  |                                     |  |

## Viewing pair synchronization rates

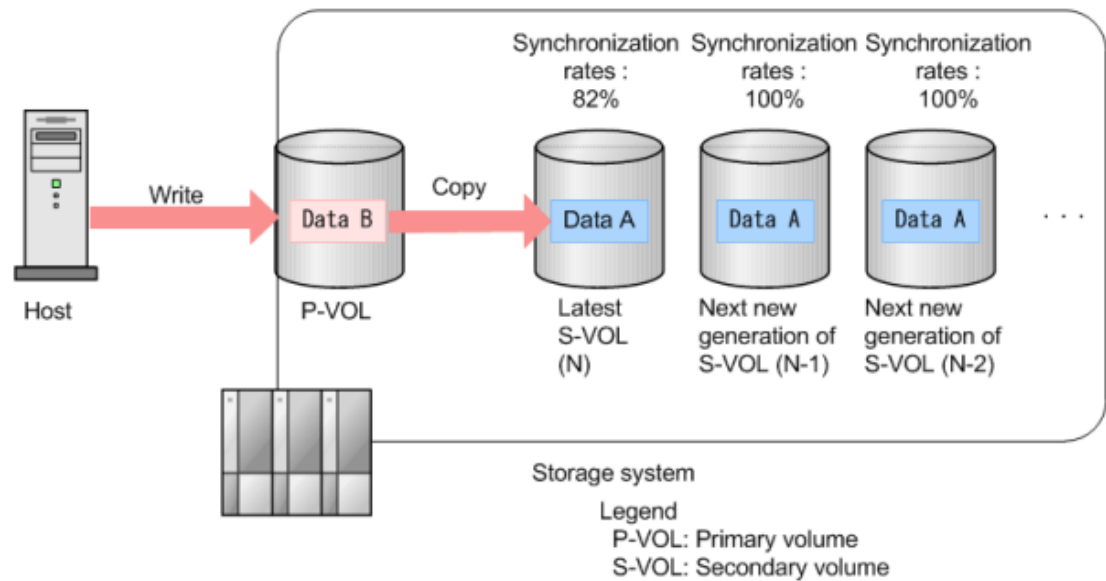
You can check the percentage of data that is synchronized between the P-VOL and S-VOLs. The Thin Image synchronization rate shows the rate that S-VOL data matches that of the next new generation of the S-VOL. If the S-VOL is the latest one, the synchronization rate is computed by comparing the S-VOL with the P-VOL.

The synchronization rate is a rough value, and can have a large margin of error. If the P-VOL is written to in the configuration of multiple generation (the configuration between the P-VOL and S-VOLs is 1:N), the



synchronization rates for only the S-VOL of the newest generation decrease. If the S-VOL is written to, only the synchronization rates of the written generation decrease.

The following figure shows how to monitor the synchronization rates.



**Note:** During the Thin Image pair restoration process, the pair synchronization rate may not be up to date. The task must complete for the rate to be up to date.

For more information about restoring Thin Image pairs, see [Restoring Thin Image pairs on page 108](#).

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.

2. In the **Local Replication** window, select a P-VOL in the **TI Primary Volumes** tab or a snapshot group in the **Snapshot Groups** tab.
3. Click **Operate TI Pairs**.
4. In the **TI Pairs** window, select the pair for which you want to monitor synchronization rates, and then click **More Actions > View Pair Synchronization Rate**.
5. To check a pair's status and ensure the data is current, click **Refresh**. The latest synchronization rates are shown.

#### **Related references**

- [View Pair Synchronization Rate window](#) on page 202

## **Monitoring consistency groups**

### **Viewing the number of consistency groups**

You can view the number of consistency groups that are in use.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to one of the following windows:
  - **Local Replication** window.

The screenshot shows the 'Local Replication' window for VSP G1000(S/N:2586). The top section displays summary statistics:

|  |                           |    |                               |                          |
|--|---------------------------|----|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Number of Pairs                        | ShadowImage               | 5  | Number of Consistency Groups  | 1 (Max Allowed: 2048)    |
|  | ShadowImage for Mainframe | 4  | Number of Snapshot Groups     | 2                        |
|  | Thin Image                | 7  | Number of Pair Tables         | SI/SIMF/Volume Migration |
|  | Total                     | 16 | TI                            | 7 (Max Allowed: 1048575) |
| Snapshot Estimated Manageable Capacity | 441.81 TB                 |    | Number of Differential Tables | 9 (Max Allowed: 419200)  |

The bottom section shows the 'Consistency Groups' tab with a table of data:

| CTG ID | Status  | Number of Pairs |
|--------|---------|-----------------|
| 000    | TI Used | 2               |
| 001    | Free    | 0               |
| 002    | Free    | 0               |
| 003    | Free    | 0               |
| 004    | Free    | 0               |
| 005    | Free    | 0               |
| 006    | Free    | 0               |

For more information about how to view this information on this window, see [Viewing local replication summary information on page 123](#).

- **Consistency Group Properties** window.

The screenshot shows the 'Consistency Group Properties' window for CTG ID 000. The top section displays summary statistics:

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| CTG ID          | 000     |
| Status          | TI Used |
| Number of Pairs | 1       |

The bottom section shows the 'Pairs' tab with a table of data:

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Emulation Type | Capacity | CLPR    | Virtual Storage Machine | Virtual LDEV ID | Virtual LDEV Name |
|----------|-----------|----------------|----------|---------|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 00:FE:00 |           | OPEN-V CVS     | 1.00 GB  | 0:CLPR0 | VSP G1000 / 02656       | 00:FE:00        |                   |

For more information about viewing this information on this window, see [Viewing consistency group properties on page 133](#).

## Related references

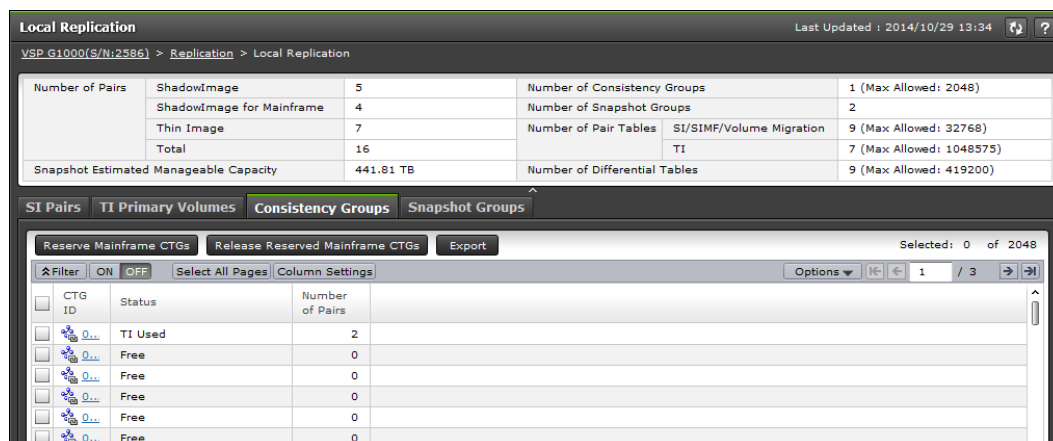
- [Local Replication window](#) on page 192
- [Consistency Group Properties window](#) on page 210

## Viewing the list of consistency groups

You can view the list of consistency groups.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.
 In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select the **Consistency Groups** tab.



A list of consistency groups is shown in the **Local Replication** window, in the **Consistency Groups** tab.

### Related tasks

- [Viewing local replication summary information](#) on page 123

## Related references

- [Local Replication window](#) on page 192

## Viewing consistency group properties

You can view the properties of a consistency group using the Consistency Group Properties window.

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Local Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Local Replication**.

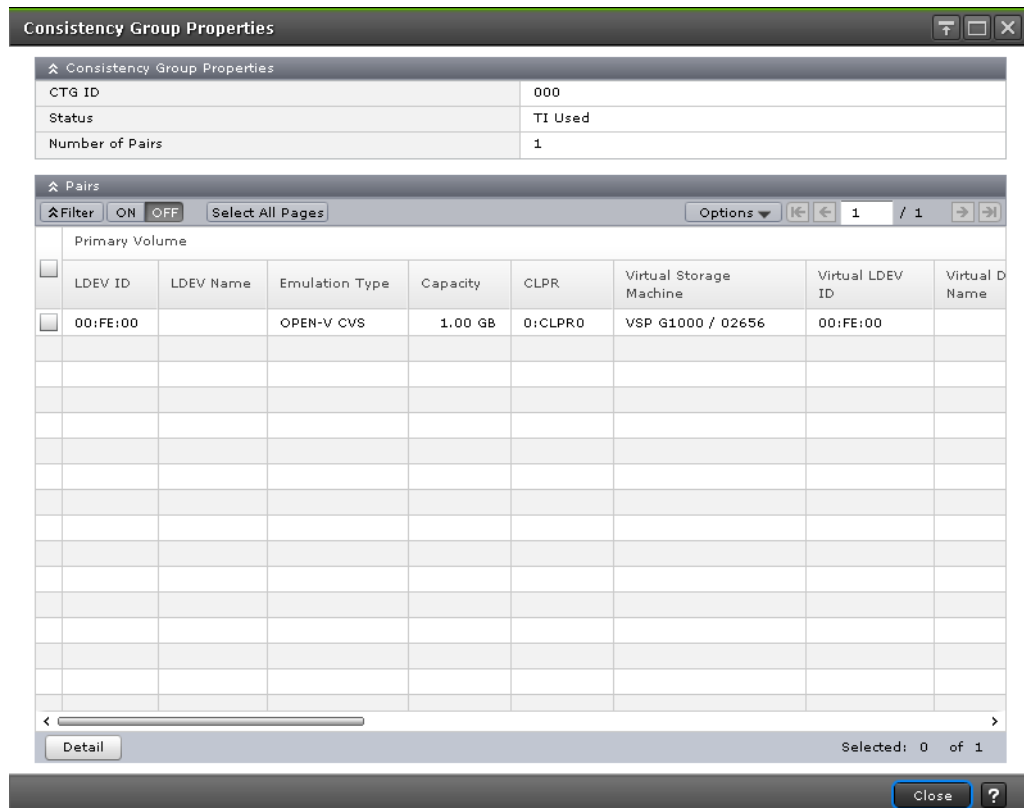
In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, expand **Replication**, and then click **Local Replication**.
2. In the **Local Replication** window, select the **Consistency Groups** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Local Replication' window for VSP G1000(S/N:2586). The 'Consistency Groups' tab is selected, displaying a table of consistency groups. The table has columns for 'CTG ID', 'Status', and 'Number of Pairs'. The first row shows 'TI Used' with 2 pairs. The subsequent rows show 'Free' status with 0 pairs each. The window also includes a 'Filter' section with 'ON' and 'OFF' buttons, and a 'Selected: 0 of 2048' indicator.

| CTG ID  | Status  | Number of Pairs |
|---------|---------|-----------------|
| TI Used | TI Used | 2               |
| Free    | Free    | 0               |
| Free    | Free    | 0               |
| Free    | Free    | 0               |
| Free    | Free    | 0               |
| Free    | Free    | 0               |

3. In the **Consistency Groups** tab, click the CTG ID for the consistency group for which you want to view properties.



4. In the **Consistency Group Properties** window, view the following consistency group properties:
  - **CTG ID:** The consistency group identification number.
  - **Status:** The consistency group status.  
Values:
    - **SI Used:** SI is using the consistency group.
    - **SIMF Used (RAID Manager):** (VSP G1000 only) SIz is using the consistency group and CCI is managing the consistency group.
    - **SIMF Used (PPRC/BCM):** (VSP G1000 only) SIz is using the consistency group and PPRC and Business Continuity Manager are managing the consistency group.
    - **TI Used:** HTI is using the consistency group.
    - **Mainframe Reserved:** (VSP G1000 only) PPRC and Business Continuity Manager are using the consistency group.
    - **Free:** The consistency group is not being used and is not reserved.
    - **(Changing...):** The status is in the process of changing.
  - **Number of Pairs:** The number of pairs that are assigned to the consistency group.

## Related references

- [Consistency Group Properties window](#) on page 210

## Viewing Thin Image pair task history

You can review task history, including which tasks you have performed on a pair, in the **History** window.

A VSP G1000 storage system saves a history of the last 1,024,000 Thin Image pair tasks. You can view a maximum of 16,384 pair tasks on each page. If there are more than 16,384 pair tasks available to view, you can view them on the next page. To view the next page, click the right arrow at the top of the page.

For a VSP G200, G400, G600, G800 storage system, you can view a maximum of the latest 8,192 pair tasks in the **History** window.

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Replication** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Right-click the target storage system, and then select **Replication Dashboard**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Replication**.

2. In the **Replication** window, click **View History > Local Replication**.

History

Copy Type: **TI** / 32

**TI History (Page.1)**

Filter: **ON** OFF

| Date and Time       | Primary Volume |                   | Secondary Volume | Mirror Unit | Pool ID | Description Code | Description               |
|---------------------|----------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------|---------|------------------|---------------------------|
|                     | LDEV ID        | Provisioning Type |                  |             |         |                  |                           |
| 2014/12/06 02:46:07 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:B4:02         | 1023        | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 02:45:58 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 64          | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 02:42:46 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 1023        | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 02:41:24 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 64          | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:14:54 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:94:02         | 3           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:13:54 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:84:02         | 1           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:10:44 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:84:02         | 3           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:08:21 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:B4:02         | 6           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:08:11 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 5           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:07:59 | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:94:02         | 4           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/05 23:20:40 | 00:44:01       | DP                | 00:B4:01         | 1023        | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 23:20:40 | 00:44:01       | DP                | 00:A4:01         | 64          | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 23:20:40 | 00:44:01       | DP                | 00:94:01         | 3           | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 21:13:17 | 00:44:00       | DP                | 00:B4:00         | 1023        | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 21:08:24 | 00:44:00       | DP                | 00:A4:00         | 64          | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 21:03:31 | 00:44:00       | DP                | 00:94:00         | 3           | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 06:31:46 | 00:44:FF       | DP                | 00:B4:FF         | 1023        | 6       | 2011             | PSUS                      |
| 2014/12/05 06:31:45 | 00:44:FE       | DP                | 00:B4:FE         | 1023        | 6       | 2011             | PSUS                      |
| 2014/12/05 06:31:44 | 00:44:FD       | DP                | 00:B4:FD         | 1023        | 6       | 2011             | PSUS                      |

Export Total: 8438

Close ?

3. In the **History** window, for **Copy Type**, select **TI** as the copy type for the pair you selected.

For more information about the values for **Copy Type**, see [History window on page 208](#).

4. In the **TI History** table, view the following information:
  - **Date and Time:** The date and time you performed the task.
  - **LDEV ID:** The primary/source volume's LDEV identification number.
  - **Provisioning Type:** The P-VOL's provisioning type.  
Values:
    - **Basic:** Internal volume
    - **DP:** DP-VOL
    - **External:** External volume
  - **Secondary Volume:** Information about the S-VOL.
  - **Mirror Unit:** The mirror unit number.
  - **Pool ID:** The pool identification number.
  - **Description Code:** The code for the type of task you performed.
  - **Description:** The description of the task you performed.

#### Related references

- [History window](#) on page 208



## Thin Image task code definitions

The following table shows a list of the codes for the type of tasks you perform, including the description of the tasks, that are shown in the TI History table.

| Description Code | Description               | Explanation  |
|------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 2001             | PAIR                      | The volumes are paired. The pair has been created.                               |
| 2011             | PSUS                      | The pair was split.  |
| 2020             | SMPL START                | The pair deletion starts.  |
| 2021             | SMPL END                  | The pair deletion ended normally.  |
| 2030             | COPY(RS-R) START          | The pair is in the process of being restored.                                    |
| 2031             | COPY(RS-R) END            | The pair was restored.   |
| 2032             | COPY(RS-R) ENDED ABNORMAL | The pair restoration process has failed.   |
| 2040             | INITIALIZE START          | Initialization processing starts.  |
| 2041             | INITIALIZE END            | Initialization processing ended.   |
| 2042             | INITIALIZE ENDED ABNORMAL | Initialization processing ended abnormally.                                      |
| 2050             | COPY(RS) START            | The pair is in the process of being resynchronized.                              |
| 2051             | COPY(RS) END              | The pair resynchronization ended normally, and the snapshot data was deleted.    |
| 2052             | COPY(RS) ENDED ABNORMAL   | The pair resynchronization ended abnormally.                                     |
| 2070             | PSUE(ABNORMAL END)        | A failure occurred and the pair is suspended. The pair status changed to "PSUE". |
| 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  | An S-VOL is assigned to snapshot data.   |
| 2081             | REMOVE SECONDARY VOLUMES  | The assignment of an S-VOL to snapshot data is released.                         |
| 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES | The assignment of an S-VOL to snapshot data is changed.                          |

## Viewing licensed capacities

You can view the licensed capacities using the **Replication** window.

### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Local Copy) role.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Replication** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.

### In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Replication**.
- View a list of licensed capacity in the summary section of the **Replication** window.

## Viewing the number of cache management devices

You can view the current number of cache management devices that are available and in use and the maximum amount of cache management devices you can create in the storage system in the **View Management Resource Usage** window.

For more information, see the **View Management Resource Usage** window in the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to the **View Management Resource Usage** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, right-click the target storage system, and the select **Other Functions**.
- b. From the **Actions** menu, select **View Management Resource Usage**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a.** From the **Actions** menu, select **View Management Resource Usage**.

## Related concepts

- [Calculating Thin Image pairs based on cache management devices](#) on page 61
- [Calculating the number of remaining cache management devices](#) on page 173

## Related references

- [Thin Image cache management device requirements](#) on page 62

## Managing pools

## Monitoring pool information

You can monitor pool information, such as used pool capacity, in the **Summary** section of the **Pools** window and in the **Primary Volumes** tab in the selected pool window.

This task shows how to monitor pool information in the **Primary Volumes** tab in the selected pool window.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** window, in the **Pools** tab, select the pool name for the pool you want to monitor.

**Snap\_Pool0(0)** Last Updated : 2014/08/05 23:35

VSP G1000(S/N:10022) > Pools > Snap\_Pool0(0)

|   |                            |                      |   |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------|---|
| Status  | Normal                     | Tier Management      | - |
| Pool Name (ID)                                    | Snap_Pool0(0)              | Cycle Time           | - |
| Pool VOL with System Area (Name)                  | 00:00:07()                 | Monitoring Period    | - |
| Pool Type   | T1                         | Monitoring Mode      | - |
| RAID Level  | 1(2D+2D)                   | Monitoring Status    | - |
| Drive Type/RPM                                    | SAS/7.2k                   | Recent Monitor Data  | - |
| Cache Mode  | -                          | Pool Management Task | - |
|   |                            | Relocation Result    | - |
|   |                            | Relocation Speed     | - |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL | -                          |                      |   |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool        | -                          |                      |   |
| Number of Pool VOLS                               | 3 (Max Allowed: 1024)      |                      |   |
| Number of V-VOLs                                  | - (Max Allowed: -)         |                      |   |
| Number of Primary VOLS                            | 2                          |                      |   |
| Pool Capacity (Used/Total)                        | 168.00 MB / 19.89 GB [1 %] |                      |   |
| V-VOL Capacity (Used/Total)                       | - / - [%]                  |                      |   |
| Subscription (Current/Limit)                      | - % / - %                  |                      |   |
| User-Defined Threshold (Warning/Depletion)        | 80 % / - %                 |                      |   |

**Pool Volumes** **Primary Volumes**

Export Total: 2

Filter ON OFF Column Settings Options 1 / 1

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Status | Used Pool Capacity | Pool Usage... | Number of Paths | CLPR     | Pool Management Task |
|----------|-----------|--------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------|----------------------|
| 00:00:2C |           | Normal | 0.08 GB            | 1             | 1               | 00:CLPR0 |                      |
| 00:00:2D |           | Normal | 0.08 GB            | 1             | 1               | 00:CLPR0 |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |
|          |           |        |                    |               |                 |          |                      |

3. In the selected pool window, in the **Primary Volumes** tab, view the following information about the selected pool:
  - **LDEV ID:** Shows the combination of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV. Clicking the ID opens the **LDEV Properties** window. Use this window to search for P-VOL information.
  - **LDEV Name:** Shows the LDEV name.
  - **Status:** For more information about this item, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.
  - **Used Pool Capacity:** Shows the used pool capacity.
  - **Pool Usage(%):** Shows the pool usage rate.
  - **Number of Paths:** Shows the number of alternate paths.
  - **CLPR:** Shows the identifier and name of the CLPR in *ID:CLPR* format.
  - **Pool Management Task:** Shows the pool management task being performed on the pool.
  - **Virtual Storage Machine:** Shows information about the virtual storage machine.
4. (Optional) To export the information in the table, click **Export**.

## Related tasks

- [Editing the data pool warning threshold](#) on page 152

## Viewing used pool capacity

You can view used pool capacity by pool or by Thin Image P-VOL.

### Viewing used capacity by pool

You can view used pool capacity by pool.

For more information, see the **Pools** window in the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

#### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. View the used capacity of the pool in the **Used** column of the **Pools** tab.

### Viewing used pool capacity by Thin Image P-VOL

You can view used pool capacity by P-VOL.

For more information, see the volume tabs on the **Pools** window in the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

#### Before you begin

- You have the Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** table, click the name of the pool for which you want to see the used capacity.
3. Select the **Primary Volumes** tab.

### Result

The used pool capacity of the Thin Image P-VOLs appears in the Used Pool Capacity column.

## Viewing formatted pool capacity and pool usage rates

You can view the progress of rebalancing the pool usage rates among parity groups using the **View Pool Management Status** window.

For more information about the formatted pool capacity and pool usage rates, and the **View Pool Management Status** window, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** window, in the **Pools** tab, select the check box for the pool for which you want to view capacity from the list, and then click **More Actions > View Pool Management Status**.
3. In the **View Pool Management Status** window, view the following items:  
**Capacity**
  - **Used/Total:** The formatted pool capacity.
  - **Free:** The pool usage rate.
4. Click **Close**.

### Related tasks

- [Editing the data pool warning threshold](#) on page 152

## Increasing pool capacity

Adding pool-VOLs to a pool increases, or expands, the pool's capacity. Check the pool's available capacity and expand the pool as needed.

Use the following formula to calculate the pool capacity:

Pool capacity = Total capacity of pool-VOLs in the pool -  
Management area size of the pool-VOL with the system area

You can add up to 1,024 pool-VOLs (including volumes already in a pool) to a pool.

Adding pool-VOLs to pools to expand pool capacity moves data to the added space on a per-page basis, which rebalances the usage rate among parity groups of the pool-VOLs.



**Caution:** Moving existing data to the added space on a per-page basis can decrease host I/O performance.

---



**Note:** You can only increase the capacity for one pool at a time.

---

### Before you begin

You are not currently decreasing the pool capacity.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** tab, select the check box for the pool to which you want to add a pool-VOL from the list, and then click **Expand Pool**.

Expand Pool

1.Expand Pool > 2.Confirm

This wizard lets you add LDEVs to increase the pool capacity.  
Set the Drive Type and RAID Level and click Select Pool Volumes. Click Finish to confirm.

Pool Volume Selection:

Drive Type/RPM:

SAS/7.2k

RAID Level:

1(2D+2D)

Select Pool VOLS

Total Selected Pool Volumes:

Total Selected Capacity:

Back

Next

Finish

Cancel

?

3. In the **Expand Pool** window of the **Expand Pool** wizard, click **Select Pool VOLS**.

Select Pool VOLS

Select pool volume(s) from the Available Pool Volumes list. Click Add to add the pool volume, and click OK.

Available Pool Volumes

Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Options 1 / 1

| <input type="checkbox"/> | LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Capacity | Parity Group ID | RAID Level | Drive Type/RPM |
|--------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|-----------------|------------|----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:10 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:11 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:12 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:13 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:14 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:15 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:16 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:17 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 00:00:18 |           | 8.00 GB  | 1-14            | 1(2D+2D)   | SAS/10k        |

Add Remove

Selected: 0 of 9

External LDEV Tier Rank:

Selected Pool Volumes

Select All Pages Options

| <input type="checkbox"/> | LDEV ID | LDEV Name | Capacity | Parity Group ID | RAID Level | Drive Type/RPM |
|--------------------------|---------|-----------|----------|-----------------|------------|----------------|
| No Data                  |         |           |          |                 |            |                |

OK Cancel ?

144

Monitoring and maintaining Thin Image  
Hitachi Thin Image User Guide for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G Series and F Series



4. In the **Select Pool VOLs** window, complete the following, and then click **OK**:
- (Optional) To filter rows, in the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select **ON** in the **Filter** component.
  - (Optional) To select all of the pool-VOLs in the list, in the **Available Pool Volumes** table, click **Select All Pages**.
  - (Optional) To specify the capacity unit and the number of rows to display, in the **Available Pool Volumes** table, click **Options**.
  - In the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select the LDEV you want, and then click **Add**.  
The LDEV is moved to the **Selected Pool Volumes** table.

Expand Pool

1. Expand Pool > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you add LDEVs to increase the pool capacity.  
Set the Drive Type and RAID Level and click Select Pool Volumes. Click Finish to confirm.

Pool Volume Selection:

Drive Type/RPM: SAS/7.2k

RAID Level: 1(2D+2D)

Select Pool VOLs

Total Selected Pool Volumes:

Total Selected Capacity:

< Back Next > Finish Cancel ?

5. In the **Expand Pool** window of the **Expand Pool** wizard, click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.

6. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 $\backslash / : , ; * ? " < > |$
7. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
8. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Failure of available pool capacity formatting and pool capacity increase

Pool capacity formatting and increase can fail in some circumstances.

The following are the circumstances under which the available pool capacity is not formatted and the available pool capacity is not increased:

- You are formatting a pool-VOL other than the one that you have selected to format.  
For more information about formatting LDEVs, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.
- The pool usage rate has reached the warning threshold (see [Editing the data pool warning threshold on page 152](#)).
- The I/O loads on the storage system are high.
- One of the following is blocked:
  - The selected pool.
  - The cache memory.
  - The pool-VOLs in the selected pool.
  - The external pool-VOLs in the selected pool.

- The access attribute on the pool-VOL in the selected pool has been corrected.
- You are not operating the format function for available pool capacity.

The following are circumstances under which the formatted pool capacity might decrease:

- New pages are being allocated.
- Correction copy is being executed.

## Decreasing pool capacity

You can decrease the pool capacity for up to eight tasks at the same time.

For more information about decreasing pool capacity, formatting LDEVs, and the **Shrink Pool** window, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

If processing ends abnormally, check the Tasks window.

### Before you begin

- The used capacity of the pool-VOL is below the pool threshold.
- If you are deleting pool-VOLs with system area, there is more than 4.2 GB of available capacity.
- You are currently not:
  - Creating a pool.
  - Deleting a pool.
  - Increasing a pool.
  - Deleting a pool-VOL to decrease the pool capacity.
  - Recovering a pool.
  - Stopping the process of decreasing pool capacity.
  - Editing a data pool warning threshold.
  - Simultaneously running CCI commands to decrease the pool capacity.
- You are not maintaining the cache memory.
- The cache memory is up and running.
- The I/O load to the V-VOL related to the pool is low.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** tab, click the name of the pool for which you want to decrease capacity.

113(113) Last Updated : 2014/07/24 18:10

VSP G1000(S/N:2628) > Pools > 113(113)

|   |                              |                      |                                     |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Status  | Normal                       | Tier Management      | Manual                              |
| Pool Name (ID)                                    | 113(113)                     | Cycle Time           | -                                   |
| Pool VOL with System Area (Name)                  | 00:08:32()                   | Monitoring Period    | -                                   |
| Pool Type   | DT                           | Monitoring Mode      | Period Mode                         |
| RAID Level  | Mixed                        | Monitoring Status    | -                                   |
| Drive Type/RPM                                    | Mixed                        | Recent Monitor Data  | 2014/07/22 04:38 - 2014/07/22 05:03 |
| Cache Mode  | -                            | Pool Management Task | -                                   |
|   |                              | Relocation Result    | Completed                           |
|   |                              | Relocation Speed     | 5(Fastest)                          |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL | No                           |                      |                                     |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool        | No                           |                      |                                     |
| Number of Pool VOLS                               | 77 (Max Allowed: 1024)       |                      |                                     |
| Number of V-VOLs                                  | 100 (Max Allowed: 63232)     |                      |                                     |
| Number of Primary VOLS                            | -                            |                      |                                     |
| Pool Capacity (Used/Total)                        | 410.15 GB / 739.71 GB [55 %] |                      |                                     |
| V-VOL Capacity (Used/Total)                       | 410.15 GB / 9.76 TB [4 %]    |                      |                                     |
| Subscription (Current/Limit)                      | 1354 % / Unlimited           |                      |                                     |
| User-Defined Threshold (Warning/Depletion)        | 90 % / 100 %                 |                      |                                     |

**Pool Volumes** **Virtual Volumes**

Expand Pool Shrink Pool Stop Shrinking Pools More Actions

Selected: 0 of 77

| Filter   | ON        | OFF    | Select All      | Pages           | Column Settings | Options        | IC             | 1       | 1                 | 1          | 1 |
|----------|-----------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------|-------------------|------------|---|
| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Status | Parity Group ID | Usable Capacity | RAID Level      | Emulation Type | Drive Type/RPM | Tier ID | Provisioning Type | Shrinkable |   |
| 00:07:53 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:07:58 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:07:59 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:07:50 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:08:32 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:08:33 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:08:34 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:08:9A |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:09:02 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:09:03 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:09:0F |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |
| 00:09:2E |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |   |

3. In the **Pool Name** window, in the **Pool Volumes** tab, from the list of volumes, select the check box for the pool that contains the pool-VOLs you want to delete to decrease pool capacity, and then click **Shrink Pool**.

**Note:** You can select one or more pool volumes.

4. In the **Prediction Result of Shrinking** table, confirm the pool capacity, the used pool capacity, and the free pool capacity, before and after shrinking.
5. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
6. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
7. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Result

The tiers in pools are deleted and the pool capacity is decreased.

## Stopping the process of decreasing pool capacity

You can stop the process of decreasing pool capacity.

For more information about the **Stop Shrinking Pools** window, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** tab, click the name of the pool for which you want to stop decreasing capacity.

113(113) Last Updated : 2014/07/24 18:10

VSP G1000(S/N:2628) > Pools > 113(113)

|   |                              |                      |                                     |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Status  | Normal                       | Tier Management      | Manual                              |
| Pool Name (ID)                                    | 113(113)                     | Cycle Time           | -                                   |
| Pool VOL with System Area (Name)                  | 00:08:32()                   | Monitoring Period    | -                                   |
| Pool Type   | DT                           | Monitoring Mode      | Period Mode                         |
| RAID Level  | Mixed                        | Monitoring Status    | -                                   |
| Drive Type/RPM                                    | Mixed                        | Recent Monitor Data  | 2014/07/22 04:38 - 2014/07/22 05:03 |
| Cache Mode  | -                            | Pool Management Task | -                                   |
|   |                              | Relocation Result    | Completed                           |
|   |                              | Relocation Speed     | 5(Fastest)                          |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL | No                           |                      |                                     |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool        | No                           |                      |                                     |
| Number of Pool VOLS                               | 77 (Max Allowed: 1024)       |                      |                                     |
| Number of V-VOLs                                  | 100 (Max Allowed: 63232)     |                      |                                     |
| Number of Primary VOLS                            | -                            |                      |                                     |
| Pool Capacity (Used/Total)                        | 410.15 GB / 739.71 GB [55 %] |                      |                                     |
| V-VOL Capacity (Used/Total)                       | 410.15 GB / 9.76 TB [4 %]    |                      |                                     |
| Subscription (Current/Limit)                      | 1354 % / Unlimited           |                      |                                     |
| User-Defined Threshold (Warning/Depletion)        | 90 % / 100 %                 |                      |                                     |

**Pool Volumes** **Virtual Volumes**

Expand Pool Shrink Pool Stop Shrinking Pools More Actions

Selected: 0 of 77

| Filter   | ON        | OFF    | Select All      | Pages           | Column Settings | Options        | IC             | 1       | 1                 | 1          |
|----------|-----------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------|-------------------|------------|
| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Status | Parity Group ID | Usable Capacity | RAID Level      | Emulation Type | Drive Type/RPM | Tier ID | Provisioning Type | Shrinkable |
| 00:07:53 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:07:58 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:07:59 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:07:50 |           | Normal | 1-1             | 9.96 GB         | 5(3D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SSD/-          | Tier1   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:08:32 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:08:33 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:08:34 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:08:9A |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:09:02 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:09:03 |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:09:0F |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |
| 00:09:2E |           | Normal | 5-2             | 9.96 GB         | 5(7D+1P)        | OPEN-V CVS     | SAS/7.2k       | Tier3   | Basic             | Yes        |

3. In the **Pool Name** window, in the **Pool Volumes** tab, from the list of volumes, select the check box for the pool that contains the pool-VOLs for which you want to stop decreasing pool capacity, and then click **Stop Shrinking Pool**.



**Note:** You can select one or more pool volumes.

| Pool Name (ID) | RAID Level | Capacity   | Pool Type | Drive Type/RPM | User-Defined Threshold (%) |           |
|----------------|------------|------------|-----------|----------------|----------------------------|-----------|
|                |            |            |           |                | Warning                    | Depletion |
| DT_Max(7)      | Mixed      | 1655 Pa... | DT        | Mixed          | 70                         | 80        |
|                |            |            |           |                |                            |           |
|                |            |            |           |                |                            |           |
|                |            |            |           |                |                            |           |
|                |            |            |           |                |                            |           |

4. In the **Stop Shrinking Pools** window, confirm the settings.  
If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **Pool Properties** window will be displayed.
5. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 \ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
6. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
7. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Editing the data pool warning threshold

You can prevent the pool from reaching full capacity by monitoring the pool usage rate.

For more information about checking alerts and checking the details of a SIM, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide* or the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.

For more information about SNMP, see the *Hitachi SNMP Agent User Guide*.



## Before you begin

You are not decreasing the pool capacity.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

- In the **Pools** tab, from the list of pools, select the check box for the pool with the warning threshold that you want to change, and then click **More Actions > Edit Pools**.

- In the **Edit Pools** window of the **Edit Pools** wizard, complete the following:

#### Warning Threshold

- Enter the data pool warning threshold.
- Range: 20% - 95%, in 1% increments.
- Default: 80%



**Caution:** Excessive pool usage rates (rates over 50%) are rounded down to the closest integer. Therefore, excessive pool usage in SIM and SNMP might be reported when the actual pool usage rate exceeds the threshold, even though the value shown is only 50%.

- Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.

- Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 $\backslash$  / : , ; \* ? " < > |
- If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
- Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related references

- [Thin Image data pool requirements](#) on page 58

## Editing pool names

You can edit pool names.

### Procedure

- Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.
 In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** tab, from the list of pools, select the check box for the pool whose name you want to change, and then click **More Actions > Edit Pools**.

**Edit Pools**

1.Edit Pools > 2.Confirm

This wizard lets you edit one or more properties.  
Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter the new value.

☐ Multi-Tier Pool: ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

☐ Active Flash

[Options for Multi-Tier Pool](#)

☐ Tier Management: ☐ Auto ☒ Manual

Cycle Time:  Hour(s)

Monitoring Period:  -

☐ Monitoring Mode:  Continuous Mode

☐ Relocation Speed:  3(Standard)

|                                       | Tier1                              | Tier2                         | Tier3                         |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Buffer Space for New page assignment: | <input type="text"/> 8 %<br>(0-50) | <input type="text"/> %<br>(-) | <input type="text"/> %<br>(-) |
| Buffer Space for Tier relocation:     | <input type="text"/> 2 %<br>(2-40) | <input type="text"/> %<br>(-) | <input type="text"/> %<br>(-) |

☐ Subscription Limit:  %  
(0-65534, or blank for "Unlimited")

Prefix  Initial Number   
(Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number)

☐ Pool Name:

☐ Warning Threshold:  70 %  
(1-100)

☐ Depletion Threshold:  80 %  
(1-100 and greater than or equal to Warning Threshold)

☐ Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL: ☒ Yes ☐ No

Back Next Finish Cancel ?

3. In the **Edit Pools** window of the **Edit Pools** wizard, complete the following items for **Pool Name**:
  - **Prefix**  
Enter the new alphanumeric characters that precede the pool number. This field is case sensitive.
  - **Initial Number**  
Enter the pool's new initial number, using 9 digits or fewer.

The character limit for both fields together is 32 alphanumeric characters.

- Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.

- Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 \ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
- If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
- Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Workflow for recovering blocked pools

Use this workflow to recover a blocked pool.

- Recover the blocked pool-VOLs.  
For more information about recovering blocked pool-VOLs, call Hitachi Data Systems customer support.
- Recover the pool and do one of the following:
  - Add additional pool-VOLs to the pool.
  - Increase the unused capacity by resynchronizing pairs to delete the P-VOL's snapshot data.
- Recover the Thin Image pairs by deleting and recreating them.

### Related tasks

- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111
- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113

- [Increasing pool capacity](#) on page 142
- [Recovering blocked pools](#) on page 158

## Recovering blocked pools

You can recover blocked pools using the **Restore Pools** window.

The pool recovery time depends on pool or V-VOL usage and system workload. Calculate roughly 20 minutes of recovery time for every 100 TB of pool or V-VOL usage.



**Caution:** Recover blocked pools for disaster recovery purpose only.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** tab, from the list of pools, select the check box for the pool that you want to recover, click **More Actions > Restore Pools**, and then confirm the settings.

| Pool Name (ID) | RAID Level | Capacity | Pool Type | Drive Type/RPM | User-Defined Threshold (%) |           |
|----------------|------------|----------|-----------|----------------|----------------------------|-----------|
|                |            |          |           |                | Warning                    | Depletion |
| DP(1)          | 1(2D+2D)   | 20.00 GB | DP        | SAS/15k        | 70                         | 80        |
|                |            |          |           |                |                            |           |
|                |            |          |           |                |                            |           |
|                |            |          |           |                |                            |           |
|                |            |          |           |                |                            |           |

3. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.

You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:

\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |

4. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
5. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Workflow for deleting pools

Use this process to delete pools.

1. Delete all of the Thin Image pairs.
2. Delete the pools.
3. (Optional) Erase data from the volume (volume shredding).  
For more information about volume shredding, see the *Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide*.

### Related tasks

- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113
- [Deleting pools](#) on page 159

## Deleting pools

You can delete pools that have a 0% usage rate and that are not assigned for DP-VOLs.

Deleting a pool blocks its pool-VOLs (LDEVs). To use blocked pool-VOLs, format the volumes.



**Note:** If the blocked pool-VOL is an external volume, select Normal Format when formatting the volume.

---

For more information about DP-VOL requirements, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.

2. In the **Pools** tab, from the list of pools, select the check box for the pool that you want to delete, and then click **More Actions > Delete Pools**.

**Delete Pools**

1. Delete Pools > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you delete the pools and make the pool volumes available for other use. Click Finish to confirm the deletion, or click Next to shred LDEVs for the selected pools.

**Selected Pools**

| Pool Name (ID) | RAID Level | Capacity  | Pool Type | Drive Type/RPM | User-Defined Threshold (%) | Number of Pool VOLS |
|----------------|------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| DP (3)         | 6(6D+2P)   | 995.85 GB | DP        | SAS/10k        | 70                         | 80                  |

Detail

Selected: 0 of 1

Next Task Option : Continue to Shred LDEVs

Back Next Finish Cancel ?

3. In the **Delete Pools** window of the **Delete Pools** wizard, click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.  
Click **Next** if you want to perform volume shredding to erase data from the volume.  
  
For details on volume shredding operations, see the *Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide*.
4. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
 \ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
5. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
6. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Managing virtual volumes

### Editing virtual volume names

You can edit a virtual volume's name as well as view information about LDEVs from the **Pools** window.



## Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Pools** window.

In Hitachi Command Suite:

- a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
- b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.

In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** tab, click the name of the pool for which you want to edit virtual volumes.
  3. In the **Pool Name** window, select the **Virtual Volumes** tab.

DP-pool(0) Last Updated : 2014/07/25 21:51

Storage[S/N:2648] > Pools > DP-pool(0)

|   |                              |                      |                                     |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Status  | Normal                       | Tier Management      | Manual                              |
| Pool Name (ID)                                    | DP-pool(0)                   | Cycle Time           | -                                   |
| Pool VOL with System Area (Name)                  | 00:08:32()                   | Monitoring Period    | -                                   |
| Pool Type   | DT                           | Monitoring Mode      | Period Mode                         |
| RAID Level  | Mixed                        | Monitoring Status    | -                                   |
| Drive Type/RPM                                    | Mixed                        | Recent Monitor Data  | 2014/07/22 04:38 - 2014/07/22 05:03 |
| Cache Mode  | -                            | Pool Management Task | -                                   |
|   |                              | Relocation Result    | Completed                           |
|   |                              | Relocation Speed     | 5(Fastest)                          |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL | No                           |                      |                                     |
| Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool        | No                           |                      |                                     |
| Number of Pool VOLS                               | 77 (Max Allowed: 1024)       |                      |                                     |
| Number of V-VOLs                                  | 100 (Max Allowed: 63232)     |                      |                                     |
| Number of Primary VOLS                            | -                            |                      |                                     |
| Pool Capacity (Used/Total)                        | 410.15 GB / 739.71 GB [55 %] |                      |                                     |
| V-VOL Capacity (Used/Total)                       | 410.15 GB / 9.76 TB [4 %]    |                      |                                     |
| Subscription (Current/Limit)                      | 1354 % / Unlimited           |                      |                                     |
| User-Defined Threshold (Warning/Depletion)        | 90 % / 100 %                 |                      |                                     |

Pool Volumes **Virtual Volumes**

Expand Pool Shrink Pool Stop Shrinking Pools More Actions

Selected: 0 of 1

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Status | Emulation Type | Capacity  |         |          | Used Capacity |       |       | Number of Paths | CLPR    |
|----------|-----------|--------|----------------|-----------|---------|----------|---------------|-------|-------|-----------------|---------|
|          |           |        |                | Total     | Used    | Used (%) | Tier1         | Tier2 | Tier3 |                 |         |
| 00:00:20 | tcur      | Normal | OPEN-V CVS     | 180.00 GB | 0.00 GB | 0        | -             | -     | -     | 0               | 00:CLPR |

4. In the **Virtual Volumes** tab, from the list of volumes, select the check boxes for the V-VOLs you want to change, and then click **More Actions** > **Edit LDEVs**.

**Edit LDEVs**

1. Edit LDEVs > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you edit one or more properties.  
Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter the new value.

☒ **LDEV Name:**

Prefix Initial Number

(Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)

☐ Tiering Policy:

☐ New Page Assignment Tier:

☐ Tier Relocation: ☐ Enable ☐ Disable

☐ Relocation Priority: ☐ Default ☐ Prioritize

< Back Next > Finish Cancel ?

5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window of the **Edit LDEVs** wizard, for **LDEV Name**, enter the prefix and the initial number.

[illegible]

- Click **Finish**, and then confirm the settings.
- Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
- If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
- Click **Apply** to submit the task.

## Workflow for deleting V-VOLs specified for Thin Image S-VOLs

Typically, you cannot delete V-VOLs and V-VOL groups that are specified for Thin Image S-VOLs. If the groups are specified for S-VOLs, complete this workflow.

1. Delete the Thin Image pairs.
2. Delete the V-VOL.

## Related tasks

- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113

## Deleting virtual volumes

You can delete virtual volumes.

For more information about the **Delete LDEVs** window, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Logical Devices** window.  
In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **Volumes**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Logical Devices**.
2. In the **Logical Devices** window, from the list of volumes, select the check boxes for the V-VOLs that you want to delete, click **More Actions** > **Delete LDEVs**, and then confirm the settings.

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Parity Group ID | Pool Name(ID) | Emulation Type | Capacity | Provisioning Type |
|----------|-----------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|----------|-------------------|
| 00:02:30 |           | 2-4             | -             | OPEN-V CVS     | 10.00 GB | Basic             |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |
|          |           |                 |               |                |          |                   |

3. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
\\ / : , ; \* ? " < > |
4. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.

5. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

#### Related tasks

- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113

## Viewing snapshot data capacity (VSP G1000 only)

You can use the `raidcom` command to view the snapshot data capacity for each P-VOL.

This capacity indicates the pool capacity which is used as snapshot data stored from the P-VOL, but it does not include all of the information required to manage snapshot data. Although snapshot data is assigned from the pool in 42 MB blocks, Thin Image stores snapshot data from a P-VOL in 256 KB blocks. Therefore, the snapshot data capacity is not always consistent with each pool's used capacity.

The following example shows how to use the `raidcom` command to view snapshot data capacity.

```
#raidcom get ldev -ldev_id 640
Serial# : 63502
LDEV : 640
SL : 0
CL : 0
VOL_TYPE : OPEN-V-CVS
VOL_Capacity(BLK) : 2181120
VOL_Capacity(cyl) : 22720
NUM_LDEV : 1
LDEVs : 640
NUM_PORT : 1

PORTs : CL2-E-0 14 Linux_X86
F_POOLID : NONE
VOL_ATTR : CVS : VVOL : QS
:
TIER_Alloc_level : H
TIER#1_Alloc_rate : MAX : 50 : MIN : 30
TIER#3_Alloc_rate : MAX : 50 : MIN : 30
Snap_Used_Pool(MB) : 2181
```

For more information about the `raidcom` command, see the *Command Control Interface Command Reference*.

## Maintaining pairs during storage system maintenance

You can maintain pairs when you switch off the storage system power and when you replace the microcode.

## Switching off the power supply

Use this workflow to switch off the power supply.

1. Stop the host I/O.
2. Switch off the power supply.

When power is restored, the behavior of Thin Image depends on the following:

- The power supply and having data in shared (or control) memory.
- The power supply and losing data in shared (or control) memory.



**Note:** The terms "shared memory" and "control memory" refer to the same hardware on different VSP storage systems. The term "shared memory" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "control memory" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800.

---

### Related tasks

- [Creating Thin Image data pools](#) on page 69
- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97

## Power supply and existing shared (or control) memory

After you switch off the power supply, you can use the pools and pairs if data in the shared (or control) memory exists and the data is not blocked.

The storage system checks the status of the pool and pool-VOLs. If the pool-VOLs are blocked at the time you switch off the power supply, the pool is blocked and the pairs are suspended ("PSUE" status).

If you interrupt the storing of snapshot data by consistency group by switching off the power supply and the status of all the pairs in a consistency group has not completely changed, the storing of snapshot data is not resumed when you switch the power supply on again. The status of some pairs may remain unchanged.

If the pool is blocked and the pairs are suspended, complete the following:

1. Restore the power.
2. Recover the pools.

### Related tasks

- [Recovering blocked pools](#) on page 158

## Power supply and losing data in shared (or control) memory

If you lose power and the data in shared (or control) memory is lost, a VSP G1000 storage system saves the data to SSD at the time the power supply is switched off, but for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800, you must recreate the pools and pairs.

You can still use the pool and Thin Image pairs with a VSP G1000 storage system, because the data is restored to shared (or control) memory from SSD after switching the power supply back on.

For a VSP G200, G400, G600, G800 storage system, first restore the power, then recreate the pools and pairs.

## Replacing the microcode (or firmware) offline

Microcode, also known as firmware, is usually replaced online to prevent the loss of pool and pair data in shared (or control) memory.

If it is needed to be replaced offline (for example, when changing the configuration of shared memory), pool and pair information in shared memory is lost, and pools and pairs must be recreated.



**Note:** There are some terminology differences among VSP storage systems.

The terms "microcode" and "firmware" refer to the same thing. The term "microcode" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "firmware" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800.

The terms "shared memory" and "control memory" refer to the same hardware. The term "shared memory" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "control memory" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800. In this topic, "shared memory" is used to mean either.

---





## Troubleshooting Thin Image

This chapter provides information on troubleshooting Thin Image.

- [General troubleshooting](#)
- [Completing SIMs](#)
- [Contacting Hitachi Data Systems customer support](#)

## General troubleshooting

This table lists problems related to Thin Image that can occur, along with their causes and solutions.

| Problem                                    | Causes and solutions  |
|--|---|
| Pool information is not displayed.         | <p>Cause: The pool is blocked.</p> <p>Solution: Recover the blocked pool (see <a href="#">Workflow for recovering blocked pools on page 157</a>).</p>   |
| A pool is blocked.                         | <p>Cause: The pool has reached full capacity.</p> <p>Solution:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Recover the blocked pool (see <a href="#">Workflow for recovering blocked pools on page 157</a>).</li> <li>2. Solve the problems and complete the SIMs (see <a href="#">Workflow for correcting pool-related SIMs on page 174</a>).</li> </ol>   |
| The pool usage rate exceeds the threshold. | <p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The snapshot data in the pool has reached capacity.</li> <li>• You have insufficient pool capacity.</li> <li>• The pool threshold is too low.</li> </ul> <p>Solutions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Complete one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decrease the pool usage rate by deleting the P-VOL's snapshot data (see <a href="#">Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs on page 111</a>).</li> <li>• Increase the capacity of the pool. To do this, add more pool-VOLs.</li> <li>• Increase the pool threshold.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Complete the SIMs (see <a href="#">Workflow for correcting pool-related SIMs on page 174</a>).</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> Unused volumes are required to add the pool-VOLs. If unused volumes do not exist, create new volumes or contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support and have a representative add the data drives. This problem may take time to solve.</p> |
| You cannot add pool-VOLs.                  | <p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You have reached the maximum amount of pool-VOLs that can be added to a pool (see <a href="#">Increasing pool capacity on page 142</a>).</li> <li>• Available pool management block in the V-VOL management area in the SM is insufficient.</li> <li>• Pool-VOL requirements were not followed.</li> </ul> <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add pool-VOLs to another pool.</li> <li>• Initialize the V-VOL management area.</li> <li>• Check pool-VOL requirements.</li> </ul>  |
| You cannot create HTI pairs.               | <p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You have reached the maximum amount of cache management devices.</li> <li>• You have not met the prerequisites to create the pair.</li> <li>• The status of the specified volume is not displayed because you are deleting the HTI pair.</li> </ul> <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that you have enough cache management devices to create the pairs (see <a href="#">Thin Image cache management device requirements on page 62</a>).</li> <li>• If cache management devices are running out, complete one of the following:</li> </ul>  |

| Problem  | Causes and solutions  |
|--|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Delete unnecessary external volumes.</li> <li>○ Delete unnecessary V-VOLs.</li> <li>○ Delete the HTI pairs related to the P-VOL.</li> <li>• Complete the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fulfill the conditions to create the pair.</li> <li>2. Create the pair.</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Execute the <code>in<del>gr</del>aid</code> CCI command and verify that the volume is not used by HTI, and then try the pair creation again.</li> </ul>   |
| A timeout occurs and the CCI command ends abnormally (error code EX_EWSTOT).   | <p>Cause: The consistency group contains an HTI pair whose status cannot be changed.</p> <p>Solution: Resolve the error condition and perform pair tasks (see <a href="#">Notes on using Thin Image primary volumes as TrueCopy or Universal Replicator pair volumes on page 187</a> and <a href="#">Notes on acquiring snapshot data on page 187</a>).</p>   |
| HTI pairs are not displayed in the volume list.  | <p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You have not created the HTI pairs.</li> <li>• The filtering function is prohibiting the displaying of the pairs.</li> </ul> <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create the HTI pairs.</li> <li>• Change the settings in the <b>Display Filter</b> dialog box.</li> </ul>  |
| An error occurred while restoring the pair.  | <p>Cause: A volume is blocked because a failure occurred in the data drive.</p> <p>Solution:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Delete the blocked HTI pair (see <a href="#">Deleting Thin Image pairs on page 113</a>).</li> <li>2. Contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support.</li> </ol>   |
| A volume is blocked.   | <p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A failure occurred in at least two data drives.</li> <li>• The breaker was turned off once and then the power supply switched on.</li> </ul> <p>Solution: Contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support.</p>  |
| A problem occurred in the host application for monitoring the volumes.   | <p>Cause: Access to the volume is rejected.</p> <p>Solution:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Stop the host application monitoring the volumes.</li> <li>2. Split all of the pairs ("PSUS" status) (see <a href="#">Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data on page 104</a>).</li> <li>3. Start the monitoring application on the host and check whether the host has access to pair volumes (see <a href="#">How Thin Image pair status changes on page 29</a>).</li> </ol>   |
| A virtual volume cannot be recognized correctly after the host server is booted/rebooted or the command for recognizing a device is performed. | <p>Cause: Access to the volume is rejected.</p> <p>Solution:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Stop the host application monitoring the volumes.</li> <li>2. Split all of the pairs ("PSUS" status) (see <a href="#">Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data on page 104</a>).</li> <li>3. Reboot the host server or run a command that causes the system to recognize the device.</li> <li>4. Start the monitoring application on the host and check whether the host has access to pair volumes (see <a href="#">How Thin Image pair status changes on page 29</a>).</li> </ol> |
| The host computer attempts to access the port and an error occurs.   | <p>Cause: A port may go offline because access to a volume on another port has been rejected.</p> <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait until the process has completed, and then retry the task.</li> <li>• If a host application is installed to monitor the volume, stop the application.</li> </ul>   |

| Problem  | Causes and solutions  |
|--|---|
| HDvM - SN times out frequently.  | <p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HDvM - SN cannot respond to the SVP because the load is too heavy.</li> <li>• The time-out period is not an adequate length.</li> </ul> <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait until the process has completed and then retry the task.</li> <li>• Verify the values for the HDvM - SN RMI time-out period.</li> </ul> <p>For more information about how to set RMI time-out period, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> or the <i>System Administrator Guide</i> for your storage system.</p> |
| The pair information in the <b>Local Replication</b> window is not updated. The date and time in Last Updated is not updated.  | <p>Cause: HTI processing may be in progress.</p> <p>Solution: The update will complete sometime after the HTI processing finishes.</p>  |
| After a host completes a write operation, the used pool capacity shown in the Summary section of the <b>Pools</b> window and in the list in the Primary Volumes tab of the selected pool do not match. | <p>Cause: The copy processing is running.</p> <p>Solution: Wait until the copy processing is completed. The used pool capacity shown in the Summary section of the <b>Pools</b> window and in the list in the Primary Volumes tab of the selected pool match.</p> <p>For more information about viewing the used pool capacity in this section and on this tab, see <a href="#">Monitoring pool information on page 139</a>.</p>  |
| You cannot resynchronize a suspended HTI pair ("PSUE" status).   | <p>Cause: You are attempting to create a blocked and suspended ("PSUE" status) pair.</p> <p>Solution:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Delete the HTI pairs related to the P-VOL (see <a href="#">Deleting Thin Image pairs on page 113</a>).</li> <li>2. Create the HTI pair (see <a href="#">Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator on page 97</a>).</li> </ol>  |

If the solutions in this table do not work, or if your problem is not included in this table, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

## Completing SIMs

### Workflow for completing SIMs related to cache management devices

The Reference code 670000 SIM (service information message) is issued if the number of the remaining cache management devices falls below a threshold number.

The cache management device threshold that triggers the warning SIM depends on the storage system:

- VSP G200: 256
- VSP G400 or VSP G600: 512
- VSP G800: 2,048
- VSP G1000: 4,096

For more information about SIM reference codes, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

You can view SIMs that occur in the storage system in an HDvM - SN window.

For more information about checking alerts and the details of a SIM, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide* or the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.

You must reserve enough cache management devices. If a warning SIM is issued before you deplete cache management devices, a problem has not necessarily occurred. Using the storage system and depleting the cache management devices blocks the Thin Image pair and suspends the pair ("PSUE" status).



**Note:** You cannot store snapshot data or create additional Thin Image pairs using other P-VOLs while the pair is suspended.

---

Use the following workflow to complete the warning SIMs related to cache management devices:

1. Confirm that the number of remaining cache management devices meets the threshold for your storage system.
2. Remove unneeded V-VOLs.
3. Remove all of the snapshots in the unneeded P-VOLs by resynchronizing the pairs.
4. Complete the SIMs related to cache management devices.

#### Related concepts

- [Workflow for correcting pool-related SIMs](#) on page 174

#### Related tasks

- [Resynchronizing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 111
- [Manually completing SIMs \(VSP G1000 only\)](#) on page 175

## Calculating the number of remaining cache management devices

Use this formula to calculate the number of remaining cache management devices.

```
number-of-cache-management-devices = (number of available cache  
management devices in storage system) - (number-of-cache-  
management-devices-being-used)
```

The number of available cache management devices depends on the storage system:

- VSP G200: 3,840
- VSP G400 or VSP G600: 7,936
- VSP G800: 32,512
- VSP G1000: 65,280

## Related tasks

- [Viewing the number of cache management devices](#) on page 138

## Workflow for correcting pool-related SIMs

Correct pool-related Service Information Messages (SIMs) for the following, if they occur.

- Reference code 601xxx: The pool usage rate exceeds the threshold.
- Reference code 602xxx: The pool is blocked.
- Reference code 602ffe: Multiple pools are blocked.
- Reference code 603000: The Snapshot Estimated Manageable Capacity is less than the following values, depending on the storage system model:
  - VSP G200: 12 TB
  - VSP G400, G600, G800: 20 TB
  - VSP G1000: 128 TB
- Reference code 624000: You have reached capacity in the shared (or control) memory.

xxx indicates the pool ID.

Use the following workflow to correct pool-related SIMs:

1. Complete one of the following:
  - **For reference code 601xxx or 602xxx:** Recover the pool ("Normal" status).  
For more information about the countermeasures of these codes, see [General troubleshooting on page 170](#).
  - **For reference code 624000:** Complete one of the following:
    - Delete unused pools.
    - Delete unused Thin Image pairs.
    - Delete unused DP-VOLs.
    - Shrink the capacity of the HDP, HDT, or active flash pool.
  - **For reference code 603000:** If a long time has passed since you performed the tasks listed for reference code 624000 (above), reference code 624000 is reported.
2. (VSP G1000 only) Clear the SIM from the storage system. Depending on the SIM's reference code, one of the following occurs:
  - The SIM is automatically completed.
  - You manually complete the SIM.
3. (Optional) Confirm that the SIM completed normally using HDvM - SN.

For more information about the **Pools** window and the **Complete SIMs** window, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

For more information about completing SIMs automatically and manually, see the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.

For more information about checking alerts for SIM reference codes, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide* or the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.

#### Related concepts

- [Automatic completion of SIMs \(VSP G1000 only\)](#) on page 175

#### Related tasks

- [Manually completing SIMs \(VSP G1000 only\)](#) on page 175

## Automatic completion of SIMs (VSP G1000 only)

SIMs are automatically completed in these cases.

- **For reference code 620xxx:** The usage level of HDP pool number xxx falls below the warning threshold.  
For more information about setting the data pool's warning threshold, see [Creating Thin Image data pools on page 69](#).
- **For reference code 625000:** The usage level of each HDP pool in all of the pools in the storage system falls below the depletion threshold.
- **For reference code 626xxx:** The usage level of each HDP pool number xxx falls below the depletion threshold.



**Note:** The data pool's depletion threshold is not a value you can set using Thin Image.

---

SIM reference codes 620xxx, 625000, and 626xxx are automatically completed if you increase the pool capacity by adding pool-VOLs. Increasing the pool capacity removes the condition that causes these SIMs.

## Manually completing SIMs (VSP G1000 only)

You can manually complete the SIMs related to cache management devices to clear them from the storage system and process pool-related SIMs.

For more information about completing SIMs automatically and manually, see the *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 System Administrator Guide*.

#### Procedure

1. In Hitachi Command Suite:
  - a. On the **Resources** tab, click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the storage system tree.
  - b. Expand the target storage system, right-click **DP Pools**, and then select **System GUI**.In Device Manager - Storage Navigator:
  - a. In the **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the storage system tree, and then click **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** window, click **More Actions > Complete SIMs**.

3. Accept the default task name or enter a unique name.  
You can enter up to 32 letters, numbers, and symbols, except the following:  
`\ / : , ; * ? " < > |`
4. If you want to monitor the task after submitting it, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
5. Click **Apply** to submit the task.

### Result

The SIMs are completed ("Completed" status).

You can confirm whether a SIM has been completed normally by checking the system information and status in HDvM - SN.

For more information about checking alerts for SIMs, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide* or the *Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 System Administrator Guide*.

## Contacting Hitachi Data Systems customer support

If you need to contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support, you should provide as much information about the problem as possible.

Please include the following:

- The circumstances surrounding the error or failure.
- The content of any messages displayed on HDvM - SN.
- The HDvM - SN configuration information (use the Dump Tool).
- The service information messages (SIMs), including reference codes and severity levels, displayed by HDvM - SN.

HDS customer support staff is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week. If you need technical support, log on to Hitachi Data Systems Support Connect for contact information: [https://support.hds.com/en\\_us/contact-us.html](https://support.hds.com/en_us/contact-us.html).



## CCI command reference for Thin Image

This appendix describes CCI commands corresponding to actions in the HDvM - SN GUI. Use CCI to perform Thin Image tasks by entering commands from a host.

- ☐ [Pair tasks using CCI or Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#)
- ☐ [CCI pair command results](#)
- ☐ [Troubleshooting with Command Control Interface](#)

## Pair tasks using CCI or Device Manager - Storage Navigator

You can use CCI as well as Device Manager - Storage Navigator (HDvM - SN) to perform pair tasks. When you use CCI, perform tasks by running an existing command for pair tasks or a CCI command.

Using CCI commands, you can store a minimum of 65 snapshot data or use a minimum of 64 MU numbers. For the pairs which have 0 to 63 MU numbers, you can only use the existing commands for pair tasks.

The following table shows the pair tasks you can perform, the CCI commands you can use to perform the task, and the HDvM - SN wizard and windows from which to start the task.

| Pair task   | CCI command  | HDvM - SN  |
|---|--|--|
| Create pair   | <code>paircreate</code>  | Create TI Pairs wizard   |
|   | <code>raidcom add snapshot</code>                                |  |
| Create and split pair                               | <code>paircreate -split</code>                                   | <b>Split Pairs</b> wizard  |
| Split pair  | <code>pairsplit</code>   | <b>Split Pairs</b> wizard  |
|   | <code>raidcom modify snapshot - snapshot_data create</code>      |  |
|   | <code>raidcom modify snapshot - snapshot_data split</code>       |  |
| Normal Copy   | <code>pairresync</code>  | <b>Resync Pairs</b> wizard                                       |
|   | <code>raidcom modify snapshot - snapshot_data resync</code>      |  |
| Reverse Copy  | <code>pairresync -restore</code>                                 | <b>Resync Pairs</b> wizard                                       |
|   | <code>raidcom modify snapshot - snapshot_data restore</code>     |  |
| Delete pair   | <code>pairsplit -S</code>  | <b>Delete Pairs</b> window                                       |
|   | <code>raidcom delete snapshot</code>                             |  |
| Assign an S-VOL to snapshot data                    | <code>raidcom map snapshot (VSP G200, G400, G600, G800)</code>   | Create TI Pairs wizard<br><b>Assign Secondary Volumes</b> wizard |
|   | <code>raidcom mount snapshot (VSP G1000)</code>                  |  |
| Release the assignment of an S-VOL to snapshot data | <code>raidcom unmap snapshot (VSP G200, G400, G600, G800)</code> | <b>Remove Secondary Volumes</b> window                           |
|   | <code>raidcom unmount snapshot (VSP G1000)</code>                |  |
| Change the assignment of an S-VOL to snapshot data  | <code>raidcom replace snapshot</code>                            | <b>Assign Secondary Volumes</b> wizard                           |

For more information about using the CCI, see the *Command Control Interface Command Reference*.

## CCI pair command results

To avoid getting mixed results, run CCI commands on pairs that are in the required status.

The following table shows the results of running commands on pairs depending on their status.

| Status  | CCI command |                   |           |            |                     |              |              |
|---|-------------|-------------------|-----------|------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------|
|   | paircreate  | paircreate -split | pairsplit | pairresync | pairresync -restore | pairsplit -S | pairsplit -E |
| SMPL  | Ok          | Ab                | Ab        | Ab         | Ab                  | Np           | Ab           |
| COPY  | Np          | Ab                | Ab        | Np         | Np                  | Ab           | Ab           |
| PAIR/PFUL   | Np          | Ok                | Ok        | Np         | Np                  | Ok           | Ab           |
| PSUS/<br>PFUS   | Ab          | Np                | Np        | Ok         | Ok                  | Ok           | Ab           |
| RCPY  | Np          | Ab                | Ab        | Np         | Np                  | Ab           | Ab           |
| PSUE  | Ab          | Ab                | Ab        | Ok         | Ab                  | Ok           | Ab           |
| Legend:<br>Ok: The command ends normally and the task is performed.<br>Np: The command is not rejected and ends normally but the task is not performed.<br>Ab: The command is rejected and ends abnormally. |             |                   |           |            |                     |              |              |

Do not specify noread mode (-m noread) for S-VOLs using CCI. If you do, the command ends normally but the noread mode does not take effect.

If a CCI command is rejected and ends abnormally and the host is running the HP-UX operating system, sense bytes (SSB) are output to the CCI error log file. Sense bytes indicate the cause of the error.

For more information about SSB and error causes, see [Troubleshooting with Command Control Interface on page 179](#).

## Troubleshooting with Command Control Interface

To identify the cause of errors that occur when you run CCI commands, refer to the log displayed in the CCI window or the CCI operation log file.

## Procedure

1. Find the error code in the log displayed in the CCI window or the CCI operation log file. The CCI log file's default location is `/HORCM/log*/curlog/horcmlog_HOST/horcm.log`, where the asterisk (\*) is the instance number and *HOST* is the host name.

The following figure shows an example of a log displayed in the CCI window.

It was rejected due to SKEY=0x05, ASC=0x20,SSB=0xB9E1,0xB901 on Serial#(64015)

↓  
SSB1

↓  
SSB2

An error code string in the CCI operation log file looks like the following example:

```
11:06:03-37897-10413- SSB = 0xB901,4A96
```

2. Locate the SSB1 and SSB2 codes. In the examples above, the error codes appear to the right of "SSB =".
  - The last four digits to the left of the comma (,) are the SSB1 code (B9E1).
  - The last four digits to the right of the comma (,) are the SSB2 code (B901).
3. Locate the description of the SSB1/SSB2 error code combination in the table in [Command Control Interface SSB2 codes on page 180](#). For error codes not described in this table, call Hitachi Data Systems customer support.

## Command Control Interface SSB2 codes

This table lists the SSB2 codes, the related CCI command, and the cause of the error.

| SSB2 | CCI command  | Cause of error   |
|------|--------------|--|
| 9100 | All commands | You cannot run the command because the user authentication is not performed.   |
| 9685 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because of a shortage of pair tables.   |
| 9700 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the pool is not available.  |
| 9702 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a pool ID different from the pool ID used by existing pairs with the specified P-VOL. |
| 9703 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the volume you specified as the P-VOL is already used by another HTI S-VOL.                         |

| SSB2 | CCI command  | Cause of error   |
|------|--|--|
| 9704 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the volume you specified as the S-VOL is already used by another HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9705 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the volume you specified as the S-VOL is already used by another HTI S-VOL.   |
| 9706 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because another HTI pair is using the snapshot ID you specified.  |
| 9707 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the capacity of the pair that you are trying to create exceeds the amount of licensed capacity you have reserved.   |
| 9718 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally. You tried to use a command other than <b>paircreate</b> for the volume in the pair other than the HTI pair.<br><br>This error can also occur if you run the command with an unsupported parameter specified. |
| 9719 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because the pair is in a status that the command does not accept.<br><br>This error can also be reported if you run the command with an unsupported parameter specified.                                      |
| 971A | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you do not have sufficient SM capacity.   |
| 971F | pairresync -restore                                    | You cannot restore the HTI pair because the volume you specified as the P-VOL has an S-VOL Disable attribute.  |
| 9722 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified an external volume for which the Data Direct Mapping attribute is enabled as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9723 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you have reached SM capacity (FCSE, FCv2, TPF, and Extension1).   |
| 9724 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you have reached SM capacity (more than SM 1).  |
| 9725 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because the LDEV number of the volume you specified as the HTI P-VOL is beyond the specified range.   |
| 9726 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified an unmounted volume as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9727 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a blocked volume as the HTI P-VOL.  |
| 9728 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that is in the process of being shredded or formatted as the HTI P-VOL.  |
| 9729 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume as the HTI P-VOL, and that volume has an emulation type other than OPEN-V.   |
| 972A | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the volume you specified as the HTI P-VOL has the command device setting.   |
| 972C | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the capacity of the volume you specified as the HTI P-VOL exceeds the supported size.   |

| SSB2 | CCI command  | Cause of error   |
|------|--|--|
| 972E | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the capacity of the volume you specified as the HTI S-VOL exceeds the supported size.   |
| 972F | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a V-VOL as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9730 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a pool-VOL as the HTI P-VOL.  |
| 9731 | pairresync -restore                                    | You cannot restore the HTI pair because the HTI P-VOL and TC P-VOL share a volume, and the TC pair is not split ("PSUS" status) or is suspended and blocked ("PSUE" status). |
| 9732 | pairresync -restore                                    | You cannot restore the HTI pair because the HTI P-VOL and UR P-VOL share a volume, and the UR pair is not split ("PSUS" status) or is suspended and blocked ("PSUE" status). |
| 9733 | pairresync -restore                                    | You cannot restore the HTI pair because the HTI P-VOL and TC S-VOL share a volume.   |
| 9734 | pairresync -restore                                    | You cannot restore the HTI pair because the HTI P-VOL and UR S-VOL share a volume.   |
| 9735 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a UR journal volume as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 973B | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because the LDEV number of the volume you specified as the HTI S-VOL is beyond the specified range.   |
| 973C | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified an unmounted volume as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 973D | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a blocked volume as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 973E | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that is in process of being shredded or formatted as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 973F | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume whose emulation type is other than OPEN-V as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 9740 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the volume you specified as the HTI S-VOL has the command device setting.   |
| 9742 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified an external volume as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 9744 | pairsplit -S, unmap snapshot, replace snapshot         | The command ended abnormally because the volume you specified as the S-VOL was grouped with a datastore of Hitachi Storage Provider for VMware vCenter.                      |
| 9745 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a volume other than a V-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 9746 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a pool-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 9747 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a TC P-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 9748 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a TC S-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.  |

| SSB2 | CCI command  | Cause of error   |
|------|--|--|
| 9749 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a UR data volume or journal volume in the intermediate site of 3DC cascading configuration as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 974A | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a UR P-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 974B | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a UR S-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 974C | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a UR journal volume as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 974F | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because the volume you specified as the HTI S-VOL has an S-VOL Disable attribute.   |
| 9752 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because the Max LBA size of the volumes you specified as the HTI P-VOL and S-VOL is different.  |
| 9753 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because the number of slots of the volumes you specified as the HTI P-VOL and S-VOL is different.   |
| 9754 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you specified a DP-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 9756 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified an external volume for which the Data Direct Mapping attribute is enabled as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 9757 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a Volume Migration V2 source volume as the HTI P-VOL.<br><br>For more information about using Volume Migration V2, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support. |
| 9758 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a Volume Migration V2 target volume as the HTI P-VOL.<br><br>For more information about using Volume Migration V2, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support. |
| 975A | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified an SI P-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 975B | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified an SI S-VOL as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 975C | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a DP-VOL for which the Data Direct Mapping attribute is enabled as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 975D | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a Volume Migration V2 source volume as the HTI S-VOL.<br><br>For more information about using Volume Migration V2, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support. |
| 975E | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a Volume Migration V2 target volume as the HTI S-VOL.<br><br>For more information about using Volume Migration V2, contact Hitachi Data Systems customer support. |
| 976A | paircreate   | An unavailable parameter (unsupported parameter) is specified in the command.  |

| SSB2 | CCI command           | Cause of error   |
|------|-----------------------|--|
| 976C | pairsplit             | You cannot store the snapshot data because you have run the command when the pair is suspended and blocked ("PSUE" status).  |
| 976E | pairsplit             | The snapshot data cannot be stored because the HTI P-VOL and a TC S-VOL share the volume, and the status of the TC pair is "COPY".   |
| 976F | pairsplit             | Snapshot data cannot be stored because the HTI P-VOL and a UR S-VOL share the volume, and the status of the UR pair is "COPY".   |
| 9772 | paircreate            | The HTI pair cannot be created because you specified a UR delta resync pair volume as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 9774 | paircreate            | The HTI pair cannot be created because the HTI P-VOL and an SI P-VOL share the volume, and the MU number you specified for the HTI pair is already used by the SI pair.  |
| 9777 | paircreate            | The HTI pair cannot be created because the HTI P-VOL and an SI S-VOL share the volume, and you specified MU number zero (0) for the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 977A | paircreate, pairsplit | The command ended abnormally because the HTI P-VOL and an SI P-VOL share the volume, and the SI pair was in the process of resynchronization.  |
| 977B | paircreate, pairsplit | The command ended abnormally because the HTI P-VOL and an SI S-VOL share the volume, and the SI pair status is not "PSUS".   |
| 977C | pairresync -restore   | You cannot restore the HTI pair because the HTI P-VOL and an SI P-VOL share the volume, and the SI pair is not split ("PSUS" status) or is suspended and blocked ("PSUE" status).  |
| 977D | pairresync -restore   | The HTI pair cannot be restored because the HTI P-VOL and an SI S-VOL share the volume, and the SI pair is not split ("PSUS" status).  |
| 977E | pairsplit             | Snapshot data cannot be stored because the pool or the pool-VOL is blocked.  |
| 9783 | pairresync -restore   | You cannot restore the HTI pair because of one of the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are storing snapshot data for the HTI pair that you want to restore using the consistency group to which the pair is assigned.</li> <li>You are using the P-VOL of the HTI pair you want to restore as the P-VOL for another HTI pair, and you are storing the snapshot data of the latter pair using the consistency group in which the pair is defined.</li> </ul> |
| 9786 | All commands          | The command ended abnormally because you specified a global-active device volume for quorum disk as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9787 | All commands          | The command ended abnormally because you specified a global-active device volume for quorum disk as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 978A | paircreate            | You cannot create the HTI pair using the consistency group ID because of one of the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SI is using the specified consistency group ID.</li> <li>You have reached the maximum number of pairs that can be created for a consistency group.</li> <li>A pair that uses the same P-VOL is assigned to the specified consistency group.</li> </ul>   |



| SSB2 | CCI command  | Cause of error   |
|------|--|--|
| 978B | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the consistency group ID you specified is not within range.   |
| 9790 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you have specified a DP-VOL that is undergoing capacity expansion as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9793 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because a DP-VOL that is processing the Unmap command issued with system option mode 905 ON has been specified as the HTI P-VOL.  |
| 9796 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that does not have a path definition as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 9797 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that does not have a path definition as the HTI S-VOL.   |
| 97A1 | paircreate   | If you have reached the maximum number of HTI pairs, you cannot create new pairs.  |
| 97A2 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync-restore  | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that uses two mirrors in a three UR data center configuration as the P-VOL.  |
| 97A3 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync-restore  | The command ended abnormally because the volume specified as the S-VOL uses two mirrors in a three UR data center configuration.   |
| 97A4 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because you have specified a DP-VOL in the initialization process as the HTI P-VOL.   |
| 97A5 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that was undergoing online data migration as the HTI P-VOL.  |
| 97A6 | All commands   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that was undergoing online data migration as the HTI S-VOL.  |
| 97B4 | paircreate   | You cannot create the pair and use the specified consistency group because you have reached the maximum number of consistency groups that can be created.  |
| 97B5 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair for the specified P-VOL because the maximum number of snapshot ID (MU number) was used.   |
| 97B6 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because of one of the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You were in the process of creating a new snapshot group but you reached the maximum number of snapshot groups that can be created.</li> <li>You have specified a snapshot group which has reached the maximum number of pairs allowed in a group.</li> </ul> |
| 97B7 | paircreate   | You cannot create the HTI pair because the HDP pool is being initialized.  |
| 97B9 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because the status of the pairs using the P-VOL you specified is suspended ("PSUE" status).   |
| 97BD | map snapshot/<br>unmap snapshot                        | The command ended abnormally because you specified a P-VOL that is not an HTI P-VOL.   |
| 97BE | map snapshot/<br>unmap snapshot/<br>replace snapshot   | The command ended abnormally because you specified a volume that does not exist.   |

| SSB2 | CCI command   | Cause of error  |
|------|---|---|
|      | replace snapshot is for VSP G1000 only.                   |   |
| 97BF | paircreate  | You cannot create the HTI pair from the consistency group to which the specified snapshot group belongs because of one of the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SI is using the specified consistency group.</li> <li>• You have reached the maximum number of pairs that can be created for a consistency group.</li> <li>• A pair that uses the same P-VOL exists already in the specified snapshot group.</li> </ul> |
| 97C2 | All commands  | The command ended abnormally because you specified an MU number outside the allowable range.  |
| 97C4 | All commands  | The command ended abnormally because of one of the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You have specified a pool that is not an HTI pool.</li> <li>• You have specified a pool that does not exist.</li> </ul>  |
| 97C6 | paircreate, pairsplit, pairresync, or pairresync -restore | The command ended abnormally because HTI is not installed.  |
| 97C7 | paircreate  | You cannot create the HTI pair because the capacity of cache management devices is insufficient.  |
| 97C8 | paircreate  | You cannot create the HTI pair because the capacity of the volume you specified as the P-VOL or the S-VOL of the HTI pair is more than the supported size.  |
| 97CB | All commands  | The command ended abnormally because you specified a pool that is not an HTI pool.  |
| 97CF | paircreate  | You cannot create the HTI pair because an HTI group is already using the CG number you specified.   |
| 97D4 | All commands  | The command ended abnormally because you are in the process of turning off the power.   |
| 97D5 | All commands  | You cannot run the command because even though the specified serial number matches the virtual storage machine, the physical storage system's serial number that corresponds with the virtual storage machine's serial number does not match when the virtual storage machine's serial number is specified for P-VOL and S-VOL.   |
| 97D6 | All commands  | You cannot run the command because the model, serial number, or virtual LDEV ID of the volume specified as P-VOL is being changed.  |
| 97D7 | All commands  | You cannot run the command because the model, serial number, or virtual LDEV ID of the volume specified as S-VOL is being changed.  |
| 97D8 | All commands  | The pair operation was rejected because one of the following conditions holds for the volume that is specified as the HTI P-VOL: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The volume is used as a global-active device pair volume and does not accept pair operations.</li> <li>• The volume is specified reservation attribute of a global-active device.</li> </ul>  |
| 97D9 | All commands  | The pair operation was rejected because one of the following conditions holds for the volume that is specified as the HTI S-VOL: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The volume is used as a global-active device pair volume.</li> <li>• The volume is specified reservation attribute of a global-active device.</li> </ul>  |

| SSB2 | CCI command  | Cause of error  |
|------|--|---|
| 97DA | paircreate, map snapshot                             | The command ended abnormally because the T10 PI settings for the P-VOL and S-VOL did not match.                         |
| 97DD | unmap snapshot/<br>replace snapshot                  | The command ended abnormally because you specified a pair to which an S-VOL is not assigned.                            |
| 97DE | map snapshot/<br>unmap snapshot/<br>replace snapshot | The operation failed because different DKCMAIN microcode versions are mixed. Confirm DKCMAIN microcode version.         |
| 97DF | map snapshot   | The command ended abnormally because you specified an S-VOL that is assigned to a pair.                                 |
| 97F1 | replace snapshot                                     | The command ended abnormally because the pair cannot be identified from snapshot data and the P-VOL that you specified. |
| 97F1 | map snapshot/<br>replace snapshot                    | The command ended abnormally because you specified a pair to which an S-VOL is assigned.                                |
| 97FA | unmap snapshot/<br>replace snapshot                  | The command ended abnormally because you specified an S-VOL that is not assigned to a pair.                             |
| B912 | paircreate, pairsplit,<br>pairresync                 | The HTI pair task failed because you specified the incorrect S-VOL.   |
| B9A7 | All commands   | You cannot retrieve the consistency group information because HTI is not installed.                                     |

## Notes on using Thin Image primary volumes as TrueCopy or Universal Replicator pair volumes

The `raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create` CCI command might return the error code `EX_EWSTOT` (timeout) and terminate abnormally when the status of a pair in a Thin Image consistency group cannot be changed.

Following are possible reasons why the pair status cannot be changed.

- The Thin Image primary volume is used as a Universal Replicator S-VOL, and you are reaching the UR journal volume capacity limit.
- The Thin Image license is invalid.
- The Thin Image pair volumes are blocked.
- The current status of the Thin Image, ShadowImage, TrueCopy, or Universal Replicator pair does not allow the `raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create` command to run on the pair.

After resolving these error conditions, make sure that all pairs in the consistency group are in "PAIR" status before running the `raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create` command again.

## Notes on acquiring snapshot data

There are some situations in which acquiring snapshot data might end abnormally.

The `raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create` CCI command might terminate abnormally, as shown below, if the consistency group includes a pair in a status other than "PAIR."

- The command is rejected.
- Timeout occurs with the error code `EX_EWSTOT`.
- The pair is suspended with the error code `EX_EWSUSE`.

If you perform an operation other than `pairsplit` (for example, deletion of snapshot data or a Thin Image pair) on a pair in the consistency group while the `raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create` command is running, consistency of snapshot data to be acquired cannot be maintained. Therefore, the `raidcom modify snapshot -snapshot_data create` command might end abnormally as shown below.

- Timeout might occur with the error code `EX_EWSTOT`.
- The pair might be suspended with the error code `EX_EWSUSE`.

Restoring a Thin Image pair might end abnormally in either of the following conditions.

- Snapshot data for a consistency group including the pair is being acquired.
- The primary volume of the pair is also used as the primary volume of another Thin Image pair. In addition, snapshot data for a consistency group including the latter pair is being acquired.

# Thin Image GUI reference

This appendix describes Thin Image (HTI) windows and dialog boxes.

- ☐ [Replication window](#)
- ☐ [Local Replication window](#)
- ☐ [View Pair Synchronization Rate window](#)
- ☐ [View Pair Properties window](#)
- ☐ [History window](#)
- ☐ [Consistency Group Properties window](#)
- ☐ [Create TI Pairs wizard](#)
- ☐ [Select Pool window](#)
- ☐ [Split Pairs wizard](#)
- ☐ [Resync Pairs wizard](#)
- ☐ [Delete Pairs window](#)
- ☐ [Edit Local Replica Options wizard](#)
- ☐ [TI Pairs window](#)
- ☐ [Assign Secondary Volumes wizard](#)
- ☐ [Remove Secondary Volumes window](#)

## Replication window

Use this window to perform the following tasks:

- Viewing replication summary information (see [Viewing summary replication information on page 122](#)).
- Opening the window from which you can view local replication summary information (see [Viewing local replication summary information on page 123](#)).
- Opening the window from which you can set the system options that affect performance in Thin Image (see [Changing system options that affect Thin Image performance on page 90](#)).
- Opening the window from which you can review the tasks that have been performed on a pair (see [Viewing Thin Image pair task history on page 135](#)).

The following image shows the **Replication** window with the summary section at the top of the window and the Replica LDEVs tab at the bottom.

The screenshot shows the 'Replication' window. The top section displays summary information for local and remote replication, including capacity and the number of LDEVs and relationships. The bottom section, titled 'Replica LDEVs', shows a detailed table of replication tasks with columns for LDEV ID, Name, Emulation Type, Capacity, Copy Type, and various replication methods (SI-L1, SI-L2, TI, SIMF, FCv2, FCSE, TC, UR, TCMF, URMF, GAD).

| Local Replication                 |                       | Licensed Capacity (Used/Licensed) | Remote Replication    |  | Licensed Capacity (Used/Licensed) |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| SI                                | 200.00 GB / Unlimited | TC                                | 100.00 GB / Unlimited |  |                                   |
| TI                                | 400.00 GB / Unlimited | UR                                | 100.00 GB / Unlimited |  |                                   |
| SIMF                              | 200.00 GB / Unlimited | TCMF                              | 100.00 GB / Unlimited |  |                                   |
| FCv2                              | 200.00 GB / Unlimited | URMF                              | 100.00 GB / Unlimited |  |                                   |
| FCSE                              | 200.00 GB / Unlimited | GAD                               | 100.00 GB / Unlimited |  |                                   |
| Number of Replica LDEVs           |                       | 16                                |                       |  |                                   |
| Number of FCv2/FCSE Relationships |                       | 2                                 |                       |  |                                   |
| Number of Differential Tables     |                       | 824 (Max Allowed: 419200)         |                       |  |                                   |

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name  | Emulation Type | Capacity  | Copy Type |           |         |           |          |          |         |         |         |      |         |  |
|----------|------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|-----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|---------|------|---------|--|
|          |            |                |           | SI-L1     | SI-L2     | TI      | SIMF      | FCv2     | FCSE     | TC      | UR      | TCMF    | URMF | GAD     |  |
| 00:10:00 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | Primary   | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:10:01 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | Secondary | Primary   | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:10:02 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | -         | Secondary | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:10:03 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | Primary   | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:10:04 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | Secondary | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:10:05 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | Primary | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:10:06 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | Primary | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:00 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | Primary | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:01 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | S-Normal | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:02 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | S-Normal | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:03 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | Secondary | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:04 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | T-Normal | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:05 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | T-Normal | -       | -       | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:06 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | Primary | -       | -    | -       |  |
| 00:29:07 | 3390-A     | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | Primary | -    | -       |  |
| 00:30:00 | OPEN-V CVS | 100.00 GB      | -         | -         | -         | -       | -         | -        | -        | -       | -       | -       | -    | Primary |  |

### Summary

This section is the table at the top of the **Replication** window that shows summary information about replication.

The following table lists the items in this section of the **Replication** window.

| Item                              | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Licensed Capacity                 | The used and licensed capacity of each software application.   |
| Number of Replica LDEVs           | The number of LDEVs used for replication.  |
| Number of FCv2/FCSE Relationships | VSP G1000 only.<br><br>The number of FCv2 and FCSE relationships that are in use.  |
| Number of Differential Tables     | The number of differential tables in use and the differential table limit, for local replication. Differential tables in use for remote replication are not included.<br><br>Because differential tables are not used for all operations, the number of differential tables does not change when you execute the following operations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Thin Image pair operations.</li> <li>SIz pair operations for a DP-VOL that exceeds 262,668 cylinders.</li> <li>SI pair operations for a DP-VOL that exceeds 4 TB.</li> <li>Compatible FlashCopy® V2 or Hitachi Compatible FlashCopy® relationship operations.</li> </ul> |
| View History > Local Replication  | Click to open the <b>View History</b> window for local replication.  |
| View History > Remote Replication | Click to open the <b>View History</b> window for remote replication.   |
| Edit Options > Local Replication  | Click to open the <b>Edit Local Replica Options</b> wizard.  |
| Edit Options > Remote Replication | Click to open the <b>Edit Remote Replica Options</b> wizard.<br><br>For more information about using this wizard to set the number of volumes, path blockade, and other options, see the <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i> .   |
| Edit Options > SCP Time           | VSP G1000 only.<br><br>Click to open the <b>Edit SCP Time</b> wizard.<br><br>For more information about the tasks you can perform using this wizard, see the <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i> .   |

### Replica LDEVs tab

This tab shows only pairs that consist of the P-VOL and S-VOLs (the source and target volumes for FCv2 or FCSE) allocated to each user.

The following table lists the items on the Replica LDEVs tab.

| Item   | Description   |
|--|---|
| LDEV ID  | <p>The selected LDEV's identification number, which is a combination of the LDKC, CU and LDEV. Click the ID to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window, from which you can view the properties assigned to the selected LDEV.</p> <p>For more information about this window, see the <i>Provisioning Guide</i> for your storage system.</p>  |
| LDEV Name  | The selected LDEV's name.   |
| Emulation Type   | <p>VSP G1000 only.</p> <p>The selected LDEV's emulation type.</p>   |
| Capacity   | The selected LDEV's capacity.   |
| Copy Type  | <p>The volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li> </ul> <p>HTI volume status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Primary:</b> P-VOL</li> <li>• <b>Secondary:</b> S-VOL</li> </ul> <p>If you have not configured a pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>   |
| Virtual Storage Machine*   | <p>Information about the virtual storage machine to which the LDEV belongs.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Model/Serial Number:</b> The model type and serial number of the volume's virtual storage machine.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the volume's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Device Name:</b> The name of the volume's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the volume. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Export button  | Click to open a dialog from which you can download table information to a file.   |
| <p>* These items are not shown in the table by default. You must add them using the <b>Column Settings</b> window.</p> <p>For more information about how to add items to a table using this window, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> or the <i>Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 System Administrator Guide</i>.</p> |   |

## Local Replication window



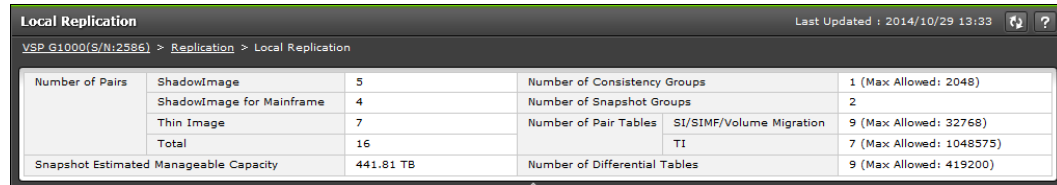
**Note:** The terms "shared memory" and "control memory" refer to the same hardware on different VSP storage systems. The term "shared memory" is used for VSP G1000, and the term "control memory" is used for VSP G200, G400, G600, G800. In this topic, "shared memory" is used to mean either.



## Summary

This section is the table at the top of the **Local Replication** window that shows summary information about local replication.

The following image shows the summary section of the **Local Replication** window.




The screenshot shows the 'Local Replication' window for VSP G1000(S/N:2386). The 'Replication' tab is selected, and the 'Local Replication' section is active. The window displays a table with the following data:

| Number of Pairs                        |           | Number of Consistency Groups |                          |
|--|-----------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ShadowImage                            | 5         | Number of Consistency Groups | 1 (Max Allowed: 2048)    |
| ShadowImage for Mainframe              | 4         | Number of Snapshot Groups    | 2                        |
| Thin Image                             | 7         | Number of Pair Tables        | 9 (Max Allowed: 32768)   |
| Total                                  | 16        | SI/SIMF/Volume Migration     | 7 (Max Allowed: 1048575) |
| Snapshot Estimated Manageable Capacity | 441.81 TB | TI                           | 9 (Max Allowed: 419200)  |

The following table lists the items in this section of the **Local Replication** window.

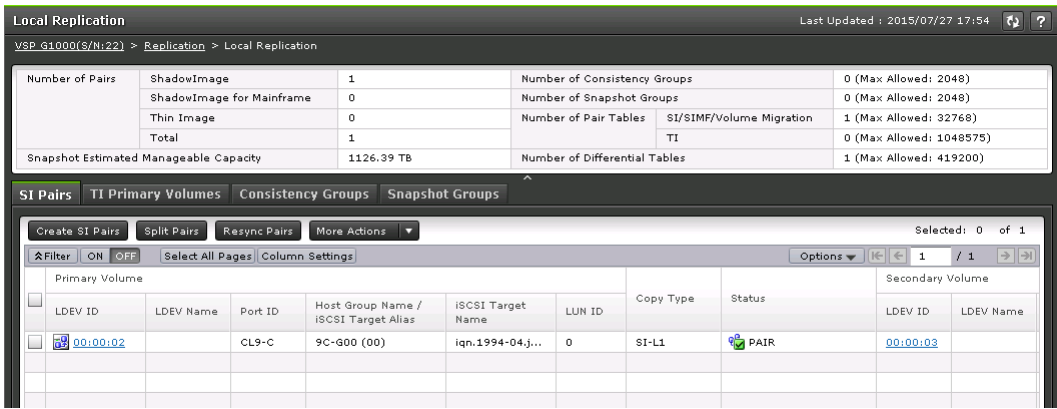
| Item                          | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Number of Pairs               | The number of pairs for each local replication software application type. The total number of pairs is shown on the Total line.  |
| Number of Consistency Groups  | The number of consistency groups that have a status other than "Free", and the consistency group limit in your storage system.   |
| Number of Snapshot Groups     | The number of snapshot groups that are in use and the snapshot group limit in your storage system.   |
| Number of Pair Tables         | <p>The number of pair tables. This number varies depending on the combinations of software applications you are using.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>SI/Volume Migration:</b> (VSP G200, G400, G600, G800)The number of SI and Volume Migration pair tables in use, and the SI and Volume Migration pair table limit in your storage system.</li> <li><b>SI/MF/Volume Migration V2:</b> (VSP G1000)The number of SI, SIz, and Volume Migration V2 pair tables in use and the SI, SIz, and Volume Migration V2 pair table limit in your storage system.</li> <li><b>TI:</b> The number of HTI pair tables in use and the HTI pair table limit in your storage system.</li> </ul> |
| Number of Differential Tables | <p>The number of differential tables that are in use and the differential table limit in your storage system.</p> <p>Because differential tables are not used for all operations, the number of differential tables</p>  |

| Item                                   | Description   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>does not change when you execute the following operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Thin Image pair operations.</li> <li>SIz pair operations for a DP-VOL that exceeds 262,668 cylinders.</li> <li>SI pair operations for a DP-VOL that exceeds 4 TB.</li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Estimated Manageable Capacity | <p>The HTI pair's estimated manageable capacity, which is the estimated HTI pair capacity that you can create using the remaining shared memory capacity. This value varies depending on the amount of HTI P-VOLs you add or delete and the number of HTI pairs you create.</p> <p>The  icon is displayed if this item is less than the following values, depending on the storage system model:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VSP G200: 12 TB</li> <li>VSP G400, G600, G800: 20 TB</li> <li>VSP G1000: 128 TB</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This value does not guarantee that the HTI pairs of the indicated capacity have been successfully created.</p> |

## SI Pairs tab

This tab only shows SI pairs to which you are allocated the P-VOL or the S-VOLs.

The following image shows this tab on the **Local Replication** window.



The screenshot shows the 'Local Replication' window with the 'SI Pairs' tab selected. The window displays various replication settings and a table of SI pairs.





| Local Replication                                   |  |                           |  |   |  |                              |  |                          |  |
|---|--|---------------------------|--|---|--|------------------------------|--|--------------------------|--|
| VSP G1000(S/N:22) > Replication > Local Replication |  |                           |  |   |  |                              |  |                          |  |
| Number of Pairs                                     |  | ShadowImage               |  | 1 |  | Number of Consistency Groups |  | 0 (Max Allowed: 2048)    |  |
|   |  | ShadowImage for Mainframe |  | 0 |  | Number of Snapshot Groups    |  | 0 (Max Allowed: 2048)    |  |
|   |  | Thin Image                |  | 0 |  | Number of Pair Tables        |  | 1 (Max Allowed: 32768)   |  |
|   |  | Total                     |  | 1 |  | SI/SIMF/Volume Migration     |  | 0 (Max Allowed: 1048575) |  |
| Snapshot Estimated Manageable Capacity              |  | 1126.39 TB                |  |   |  | TI                           |  | 1 (Max Allowed: 419200)  |  |


  

| SI Pairs   |           |         |                                      |                   |        |           |                  |          |           |
|--|-----------|---------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|-----------|------------------|----------|-----------|
| Create SI Pairs Split Pairs Resync Pairs More Actions        |           |         |                                      |                   |        |           |                  |          |           |
| Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Column Settings Options 1 / 1 |           |         |                                      |                   |        |           |                  |          |           |
| Primary Volume   |           |         |                                      |                   |        |           | Secondary Volume |          |           |
| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Port ID | Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | iSCSI Target Name | LUN ID | Copy Type | Status           | LDEV ID  | LDEV Name |
| 00:00:02   |           | CL9-C   | 9C-G00 (00)                          | iqn.1994-04.j...  | 0      | SI-L1     | PAIR             | 00:00:03 |           |

The following table lists the items on this tab.

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Primary Volume | <p>The SI P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number. Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window. Use this window to search for P-VOL information.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.<br/>(VSP G1000 only) SI only. For SIz, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.<br/>(VSP G1000 only) SI only. For SIz, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Provisioning Type*:</b> The P-VOL's provisioning type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume</li> <li>◦ <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL</li> <li>◦ <b>External :</b> External volume</li> <li>◦ <b>External MF:</b> (VSP G1000 only) Migration volume</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type*:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute*:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity*:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR*:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI*:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Encryption*:</b> The P-VOL's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.<br/>If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.<br/>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.<br/>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine*:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID*:</b> The identification number of the P-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name*:</b> The name of the P-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type",</li> </ul> |

| Item      | Description   |
|-----------|---|
|           | <p>"number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID*:</b> The virtual SSID of the P-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul>  |
| Copy Type | <p>The SI volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SI-L1:</b> SI L1 pair</li> <li>• <b>SI-L2:</b> SI L2 pair</li> <li>• <b>SIMF:</b> SIz pair</li> </ul>  |
| Status    | <p>The SI pair status.</p> <p>The following icons and pair statuses are shown:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  The SI pair is in the process of being deleted.<br/>Status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> SMPL(PD)</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> Deleting/TRANS</li> </ul> </li> <li>•  This icon is used for the following:<br/>You are copying the pair.<br/>Status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> COPY(PD)/COPY</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> PENDING</li> </ul> <p>You are resynchronizing the pair.<br/>Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> COPY(RS)/COPY</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> Resync/PENDING</li> </ul> <p>You are restoring the pair.<br/>Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> COPY(RS-R)/RCPY</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> Resync-R/REVERSY</li> </ul> <p>You are in the process of Steady Split.<br/>Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> COPY(SP)/COPY</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> SP-Pend/TRANS</li> </ul> </li> <li>•  The volumes are paired.<br/>Status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> PAIR</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> DUPLEX</li> </ul> </li> <li>•  This icon is used for the following:<br/>The pair is split.<br/>Status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> PSUS</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> Split/SUSPOP</li> </ul> <p>You are splitting the pair in Quick Split mode.<br/>Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>SI:</b> PSUS(SP)/PSUS</li> <li>◦ <b>SIz:</b> V-Split/SUSPVS</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

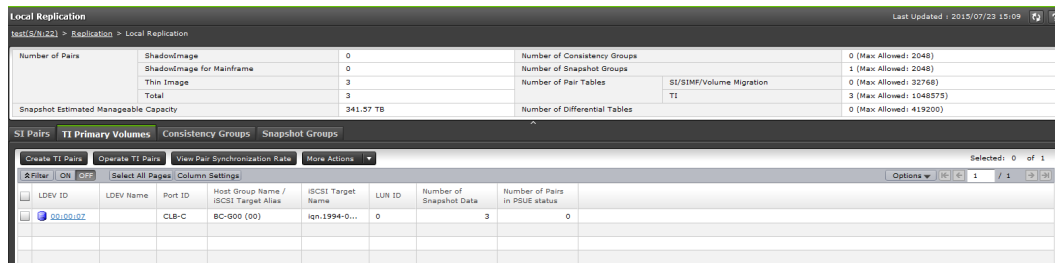
| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
|                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> The pair is suspended.</li> </ul> <p>Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>SI:</b> PSUE</li> <li>○ <b>SIz:</b> Suspend/SUSPER</li> </ul> <p>For more information about SI or SIz pair status, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> or the <i>System Administrator Guide</i>.</p>  |
| Secondary Volume | <p>SI S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.<br/>(VSP G1000 only) SI only. For SIz, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The S-VOL's iSCSI target name.<br/>(VSP G1000 only) SI only. For SIz, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Provisioning Type*:</b> The S-VOL's provisioning type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume</li> <li>○ <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL</li> <li>○ <b>External:</b> External volume</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type*:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute*:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity*:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR*:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI*:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled :</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled:</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Encryption*:</b> The S-VOL's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled:</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the S-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the S-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the S-VOL's LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.<br/>If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.<br/>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.<br/>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |

| Item  | Description   |
|---|---|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine*:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the S-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID*:</b> The identification number of the S-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name*:</b> The name of the S-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID*:</b> The virtual SSID of the S-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Copy Pace*  | <p>The speed at which the SI S-VOL is copied.</p> <p>Values: Faster, Medium, or Slower</p>  |
| CTG ID*   | The identifier of the consistency group to which the SI pair is assigned.   |
| Mirror Unit*  | The SI pair's mirror unit number.   |
| Topology ID   | <p>The SI LDEV's topology identification number, which consists of the LDEV ID and the mirror unit number. The ID indicates the pair's tier, or location, when the mirror unit locates it.</p> <p>Example: 00:00:00 (MU0-MU1)</p>   |
| Create SI Pairs button  | Click to open the Create SI Pairs window.   |
| Split Pairs button  | Click to open the <b>Split Pairs</b> window.  |
| Resync Pairs button   | Click to open the <b>Resync Pairs</b> window.   |
| More Actions  | <p>Click to view a list of tasks you can perform.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>View Pair Synchronization Rate:</b> Click to open the <b>View Pair Synchronization Rate</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>View Pair Properties:</b> Click to open the <b>View Pair Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Suspend Pairs:</b> Click to open the <b>Suspend Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Delete Pairs:</b> Click to open the <b>Delete Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Export:</b> Click to open the dialog from which you can download table information to a file.</li> </ul>  |
| <p>* These items are not shown in the table by default. You must add them using the <b>Column Settings</b> window.</p> <p>For more information about how to add items to a table using this window, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> or the <i>System Administrator Guide</i>.</p> |   |

## TI Primary Volumes tab

This tab shows only Thin Image pairs that have P-VOLs to which you are allocated.

The following image shows this tab in the **Local Replication** window.



The following table lists the items on this tab.

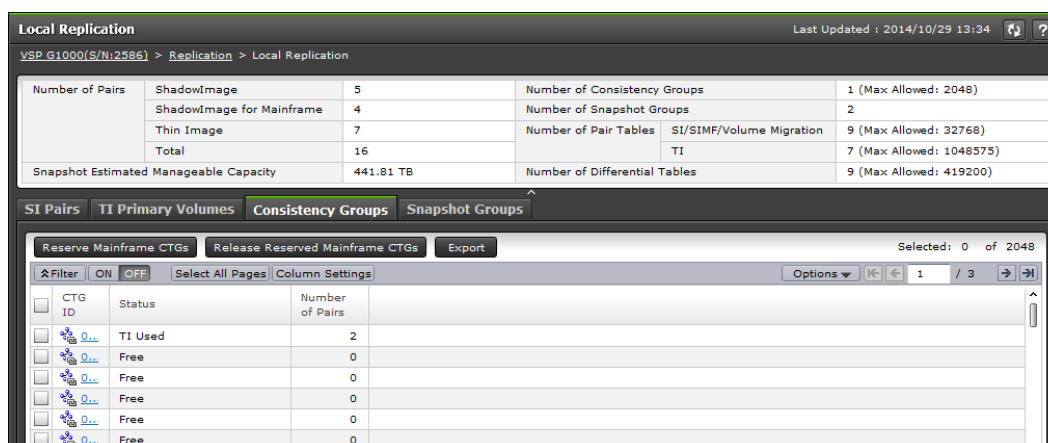
| Item                                 | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| LDEV ID                              | The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.<br><br>Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window. Use this window to search for P-VOL information.   |
| LDEV Name                            | The P-VOL's LDEV name.   |
| Port ID                              | The port identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.   |
| Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.  |
| iSCSI Target Name                    | The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.   |
| LUN ID                               | The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.  |
| Attribute*                           | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br><br>The P-VOL's attribute.  |
| Capacity*                            | The P-VOL's capacity.  |
| CLPR*                                | The P-VOL's CLPR ID.   |
| Encryption*                          | The P-VOL's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li><b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li><b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |
| Pool Name (ID)*                      | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Number of Snapshot Data              | The number of snapshot data to which the P-VOL belongs.  |

| Item  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Number of Pairs in PSUE status  | The number of pairs that are in PSUE status.   |
| T10 PI*   | <p>VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.</p> <p>The P-VOL's T10 PI information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b> : The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>: The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul>  |
| Virtual Storage Machine*  | <p>Information about the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL belongs.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Model/Serial Number</b>: The model type and serial number of the P-VOL's virtual storage machine.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV ID</b>: The identification number of the P-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Device Name</b>: The name of the P-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>SSID</b> : The virtual SSID of the P-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul>  |
| Create TI Pairs button  | Click to open the Create TI Pairs window.  |
| Operate TI Pairs button   | Click to open the Operate TI Pairs window.   |
| View Pair Synchronization Rate button   | Click to open the <b>View Pair Synchronization Rate</b> window.  |
| More Actions  | <p>Click to view a list of tasks you can perform.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>View Pair Properties</b>: Click to open the <b>View Pair Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>View LDEV Properties</b>: Click to open the <b>View LDEV Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Split Pairs</b>: Click to open the <b>Split Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Resync Pairs</b>: Click to open the <b>Resync Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Assign Secondary Volumes</b>: Click to open the <b>Assign Secondary Volumes</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Remove Secondary Volumes</b>: Click to open the <b>Remove Secondary Volumes</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Delete Pairs</b>: Click to open the <b>Delete Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Export</b>: Click to open the dialog from which you can download table information to a file.</li> </ul> |
| <p>* These items are not shown in the table by default. You must add them using the <b>Column Settings</b> window.</p> <p>For more information about how to add items to a table using this window, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> or the <i>System Administrator Guide</i>.</p> |  |

## Consistency Groups tab

The following image shows this tab of the **Local Replication** window.



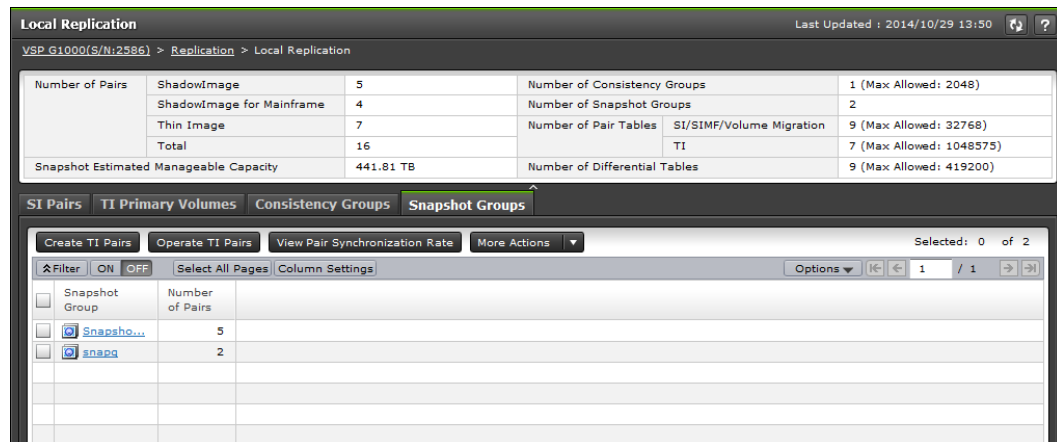


The following table lists the items on this tab.

| Item                            | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| CTG ID                          | The consistency group identification number.<br><br>Click the identification number to open the <b>Consistency Group Properties</b> window.  |
| Status                          | The consistency group status.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SI Used:</b> SI is using the consistency group.</li> <li>• <b>SIMF Used (RAID Manager):</b> (VSP G1000 only) SIz is using the consistency group, and you are managing the group with CCI.</li> <li>• <b>SIMF Used (PPRC/BCM):</b> (VSP G1000 only) SIz is using the consistency group, and you are managing the group with PPRC or Business Continuity Manager.</li> <li>• <b>TI Used:</b> HTI is using the consistency group.</li> <li>• <b>Mainframe Reserved:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The consistency group is reserved for PPRC or Business Continuity Manager.</li> <li>• <b>Free:</b> The consistency group is not being used and is not reserved.</li> <li>• <b>(Changing...):</b> The status is in the process of changing.</li> </ul> |
| Number of Pairs                 | The number of pairs assigned to the consistency group for each local replication software application type.  |
| Reserve Mainframe CTGs          | VSP G1000 only.<br><br>Click to open the <b>Reserved Mainframe CTGs</b> window.  |
| Release Reserved Mainframe CTGs | VSP G1000 only.<br><br>Click to open the <b>Release Reserved Mainframe CTGs</b> window.  |
| Export button                   | Click to open a dialog from which you can download table information to a file.  |

## Snapshot Groups tab

The following image shows this tab of the **Local Replication** window.



The following table lists the items on this tab.

| Item                                  | Description   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Snapshot Group                        | The snapshot group name.<br><br>Click the snapshot group name to open the TI Pairs window.  |
| Number of Pairs                       | The number of pairs assigned to the snapshot group.   |
| Create TI Pairs button                | Click to open the Create TI Pairs window.   |
| Operate TI Pairs button               | Click to open the TI Pairs window.  |
| View Pair Synchronization Rate button | Click to open the <b>View Pair Synchronization Rate</b> window.   |
| More Actions                          | Click to view a list of tasks you can perform.<br><br>Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Split Pairs:</b> Click to open the <b>Split Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Resync Pairs:</b> Click to open the <b>Resync Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Assign Secondary Volumes:</b> Click to open the <b>Assign Secondary Volumes</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Remove Secondary Volumes:</b> Click to open the <b>Remove Secondary Volumes</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Delete Pairs:</b> Click to open the <b>Delete Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Export:</b> Click to open the dialog from which you can download table information to a file.</li> </ul> |

## View Pair Synchronization Rate window

This window includes the Pairs table.

The following image shows this window.

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | CLPR    | Virtual Storage Machine | Virtual LDEV ID | Virtual Device Name | Virtual SSID | Snapshot Group | Status | Synchronization Rate (%) |
|----------|-----------|---------|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|--------------|----------------|--------|--------------------------|
| 00:00:0B |           | 0:CLPR0 | VSP G1000 / 00001       | 00:00:0B        |                     |              | SSG0000        | PAIR   | 100                      |

## Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **View Pair Synchronization Rate** window.

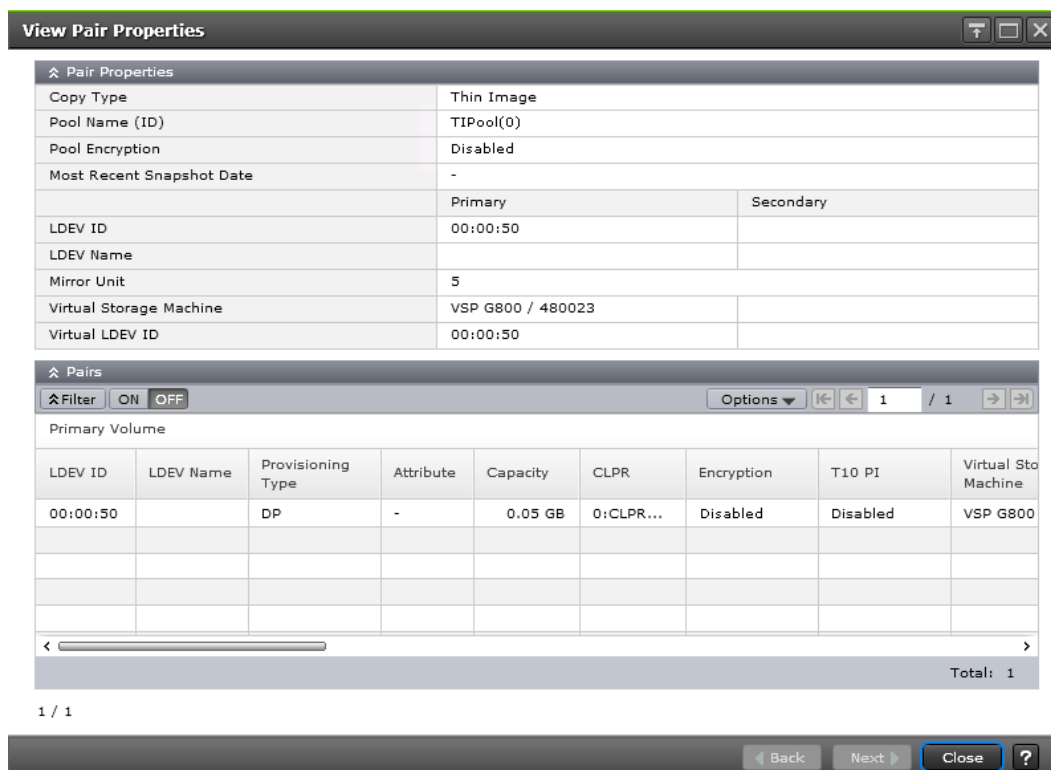
| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number. Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window. Use this window to search for P-VOL information.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the P-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the P-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the P-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Copy Type      | <p>The SI volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SI-L1:</b> SI L1 pair</li> <li>• <b>SI-L2:</b> SI L2 pair</li> <li>• <b>SIMF:</b> SIz pair</li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group | <p>The HTI snapshot group name.</p> <p>If you have not configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair, this item is blank.</p>   |
| Status         | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information about HTI pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>   |

| Item                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Synchronization Rate (%) | The rate at which the current HTI S-VOL matches the next new generation of the S-VOL. If the S-VOL is the latest one, the storage system computes the synchronization rate by comparing the S-VOL with the P-VOL.   |
| Secondary Volume         | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the S-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the S-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the S-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the S-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Mirror Unit              | The mirror unit number.   |
| Refresh button           | Click to update the information in this table.  |

## View Pair Properties window

Use this window to monitor pair properties and to confirm the status of a volume.

The following image shows this window.



## Pair Properties table

The following table lists the items in this table.

| Item            | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Copy Type       | The volume's copy type.<br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>ShadowImage:</b> SI pair</li> <li><b>Thin Image:</b> HTI pair</li> <li><b>ShadowImage for Mainframe:</b> SIz pair.</li> </ul>  |
| Pool Name (ID)  | The pool name and identification number.<br>For non-HTI pairs, a hyphen (-) is displayed.   |
| Pool Encryption | The pool's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li><b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li><b>Mixed:</b> A pool contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled, or volumes for which encryption is specified and an external volume.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> |

| Item                      | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
|                           | <p>For pools created in external volumes, blocked pools, and non-HTI pairs, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |
| Most Recent Snapshot Date | <p>The most recent date and time you created the pair to store snapshot data.</p> <p>For non-HTI pairs, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>   |
| LDEV ID                   | The identification number of the LDEV for the P-VOL and S-VOLs.  |
| LDEV Name                 | The name of the LDEV for the P-VOL and S-VOLs.   |
| Mirror Unit               | The mirror unit number.  |
| Virtual Storage Machine   | The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL and S-VOL belong.   |
| Virtual LDEV ID           | <p>The identification number of the virtual LDEV for the P-VOL and S-VOLs.</p> <p>If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</p>   |

## Pairs table

This table shows a list of all pairs related to a pair shown in the Pair Properties table.

The following table lists the items in this table.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Provisioning Type:</b> The P-VOL's provisioning type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume</li> <li>◦ <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL</li> <li>◦ <b>External:</b> External volume</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>Encryption:</b> The P-VOL's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
|                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.<br/> If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.<br/> For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.<br/> This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the P-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the P-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the P-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Snapshot Group   | <p>The snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>   |
| Status           | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information about HTI pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>   |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |
| Secondary Volume | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Provisioning Type:</b> The S-VOL's provisioning type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume</li> <li>○ <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL</li> <li>○ <b>External:</b> External volume</li> <li>○ <b>Snapshot:</b> HTI volume</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>Encryption:</b> The S-VOL's encryption information.</li> </ul>  |

| Item        | Description  |
|-------------|--|
|             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled</b> : Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the S-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled</b>: Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the S-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Mixed</b>: The pool to which the S-VOL's LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.<br/> If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.<br/> For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.<br/> This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Mode:</b> Indicates whether the S-VOL has been written to.<br/> "W" is displayed if the S-VOL has been written to when its pair status is "PSUS(SP)/PSUS" or "PSUS".<br/> A hyphen (-) is displayed if the S-VOL has not been written to.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled</b> : The S-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled</b>: The S-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the S-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the S-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the S-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the S-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| CTG ID      | The consistency group identification number.   |
| Copy Pace   | The speed at which the S-VOL is copied.<br><br>A hyphen (-) is displayed.  |
| Mirror Unit | The mirror unit number.  |

## History window

Use this window to view Thin Image pair task history.

The following image shows this window.



| History                                 |                |                   |                  |             |         |                  |                           |
|---|----------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------|---------|------------------|---------------------------|
| Copy Type: <span>TI</span>              |                |                   |                  |             |         |                  |                           |
| TI History (Page.1)                     |                |                   |                  |             |         |                  |                           |
| Filter <span>ON</span> <span>OFF</span> |                |                   |                  |             |         |                  |                           |
| Date and Time                           | Primary Volume |                   | Secondary Volume | Mirror Unit | Pool ID | Description Code | Description               |
|   | LDEV ID        | Provisioning Type |                  |             |         |                  |                           |
| 2014/12/06 02:46:07                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:B4:02         | 1023        | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 02:45:58                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 64          | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 02:42:46                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 1023        | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 02:41:24                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 64          | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:14:54                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:94:02         | 3           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:13:54                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:84:02         | 1           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:10:44                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:84:02         | 3           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:08:21                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:B4:02         | 6           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:08:11                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:A4:02         | 5           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/06 01:07:59                     | 00:44:02       | DP                | 00:94:02         | 4           | 8       | 2082             | REPLACE SECONDARY VOLUMES |
| 2014/12/05 23:20:40                     | 00:44:01       | DP                | 00:B4:01         | 1023        | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 23:20:40                     | 00:44:01       | DP                | 00:A4:01         | 64          | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 23:20:40                     | 00:44:01       | DP                | 00:94:01         | 3           | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 21:13:17                     | 00:44:00       | DP                | 00:B4:00         | 1023        | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 21:08:24                     | 00:44:00       | DP                | 00:A4:00         | 64          | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 21:03:31                     | 00:44:00       | DP                | 00:94:00         | 3           | 8       | 2080             | ASSIGN SECONDARY VOLUMES  |
| 2014/12/05 06:31:46                     | 00:44:FF       | DP                | 00:B4:FF         | 1023        | 6       | 2011             | PSUS                      |
| 2014/12/05 06:31:45                     | 00:44:FE       | DP                | 00:B4:FE         | 1023        | 6       | 2011             | PSUS                      |
| 2014/12/05 06:31:44                     | 00:44:FD       | DP                | 00:B4:FD         | 1023        | 6       | 2011             | PSUS                      |
| Export                                  |                |                   |                  |             |         |                  | Total: 8438               |
| Close ?                                 |                |                   |                  |             |         |                  |                           |

## Setting fields

The following table lists the items on the **History** window.

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Copy Type list | <p>The volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>SI:</b> SI</li> <li><b>TI:</b> HTI</li> <li><b>SIMF:</b> (VSP G1000 only) SIz</li> <li><b>FCv2/FCSE:</b> (VSP G1000 only) FCv2 and FCSE</li> </ul> |

## TI History table

Only tasks that you have performed on the pairs that consist of the P-VOL and/or S-VOLs to which you are allocated are shown on this table.

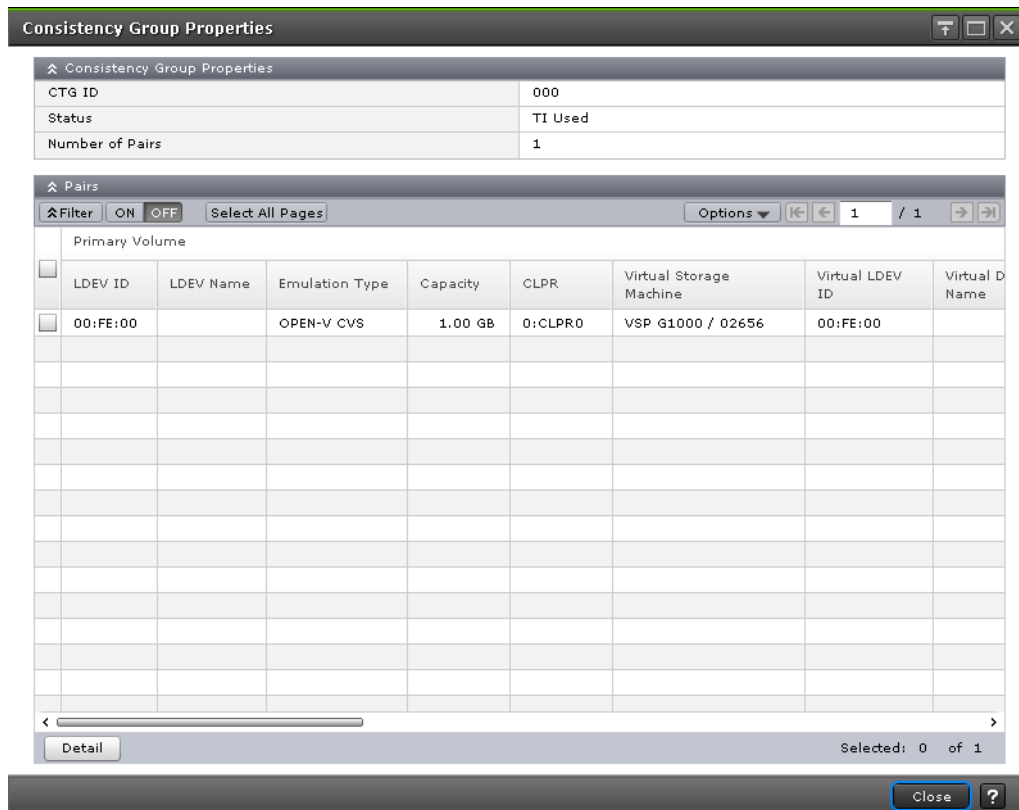
The following table lists the items in this table on the **History** window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Date and Time  | The date and time you performed the task.   |
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>LDEV ID:</b> The primary, or source, volume's LDEV identification number.</li> </ul> |

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
|                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Provisioning Type:</b> The P-VOL's provisioning type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume</li> <li>○ <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL</li> <li>○ <b>External:</b> External volume</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Secondary Volume | The information about the S-VOL.   |
| Mirror Unit      | The mirror unit number.  |
| Pool ID          | The pool identification number.  |
| Description Code | The code for the type of task you performed.   |
| Description      | <p>The description of the task you performed.</p> <p>For more information about HTI pair tasks, see <a href="#">Viewing Thin Image pair task history on page 135</a>.</p>  |
| Export button    | Click to open a dialog from which you can download table information to a file.  |

## Consistency Group Properties window

The following image shows this window.



## Consistency Group Properties table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Consistency Group Properties** window.

| Item            | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| CTG ID          | The consistency group identification number.  |
| Status          | <p>The consistency group status.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>SI Used:</b> SI is using the consistency group.</li><li>• <b>SIMF Used (RAID Manager):</b> (VSP G1000 only) SIz is using the consistency group, and you are managing the group with CCI.</li><li>• <b>SIMF Used (PPRC/BCM):</b> (VSP G1000 only) SIz is using the consistency group, and you are managing the group with PPRC or Business Continuity Manager.</li><li>• <b>TI Used:</b> HTI is using the consistency group.</li><li>• <b>Mainframe Reserved:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The consistency group is reserved for PPRC or Business Continuity Manager.</li><li>• <b>Free:</b> The consistency group is not being used and is not reserved.</li><li>• <b>(Changing...):</b> The status is in the process of changing.</li></ul> |
| Number of Pairs | The number of pairs that are assigned to the consistency group.   |

## Pairs table

This table shows a list of pairs with P-VOLs and S-VOLs to which you are allocated.

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Consistency Group Properties** window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li><li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li><li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li><li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li><li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li><li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL belongs.</li><li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the P-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li><li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the P-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li><li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the P-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li></ul> |

| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Copy Type        | The volume's copy type.<br><br>Values:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group   | The snapshot group name.<br><br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.   |
| Status           | The pair status.<br><br>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .  |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |
| Secondary Volume | The S-VOL information.<br><br>Values:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the S-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the S-VOL's virtual LDEV. If no virtual LDEV ID is assigned, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the S-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the S-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID)   | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Copy Pace        | The speed at which the S-VOL is copied.<br><br>A hyphen (-) is displayed.   |
| Mirror Unit      | The mirror unit number.   |
| Detail button    | Click to open the <b>View Pair Properties</b> window.   |

## Create TI Pairs wizard

Use this wizard to create Thin Image pairs.

### Related tasks

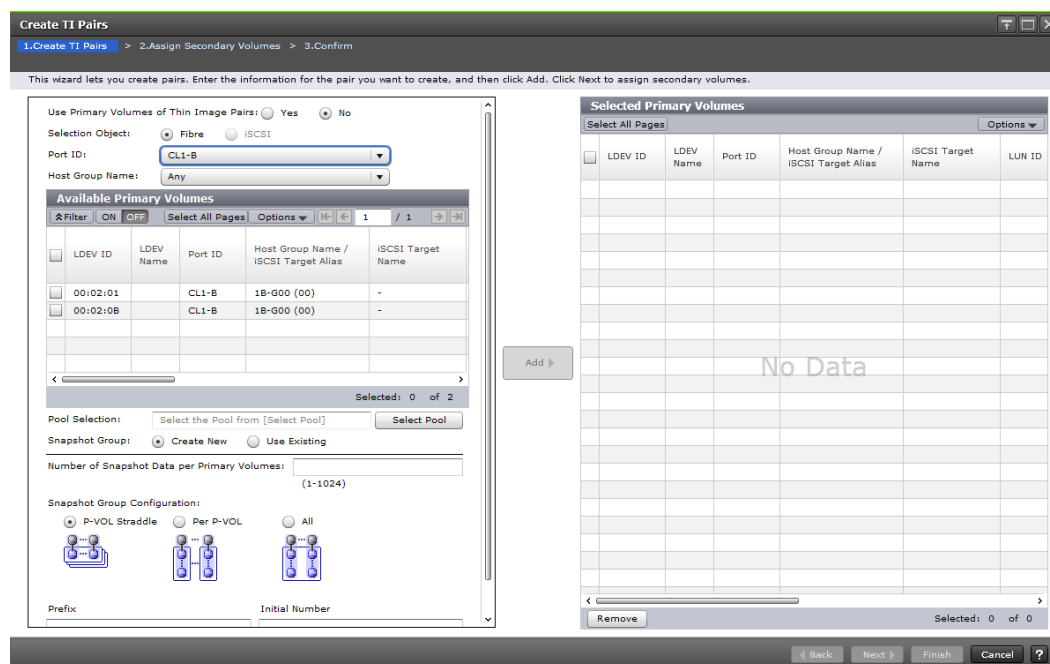
- [Creating Thin Image pairs using Device Manager - Storage Navigator](#) on page 97
- [Assigning secondary volumes to snapshot data after creating new Thin Image pairs](#) on page 115
- [Changing assignment of secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data](#) on page 119

## Create TI Pairs window

Use this window of the Create TI Pairs wizard to select LDEVs that are P-VOLs.

This window is the first window of the Create TI Pairs wizard.

The following image shows this window.



## Setting fields

The following table lists the items on this window of the Create TI Pairs wizard.

| Item                                    | Description   |
|---|---|
| Use Primary Volumes of Thin Image Pairs | Specifies whether you want to use the Thin Image pair's P-VOL.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes:</b> The storage system shows only P-VOLs of the pair that is already created in the Available Primary Volumes table.</li> <li><b>No:</b> The storage system shows only LDEV of the pair that is not created yet in the Available Primary Volumes table.</li> </ul> |
| Selection Object                        | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br><br>Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table according to port type.   |

| Item                                       | Description   |
|--|---|
| Port ID                                    | The LDEV's LUN path port identification number for which you want to filter the Available LDEVs table.  |
| Host Group Name                            | The host group name of the LDEV's LUN path for which you want to filter the Available Primary Volumes table. This item is displayed if you select a Fibre Channel port for Port ID.<br><br>Default: Any   |
| iSCSI Target Alias                         | The iSCSI target alias for which you want to filter the Available Primary Volumes table. This item is displayed if you select an iSCSI port for Port ID.<br><br>Default: Any  |
| Select Pool button                         | Click to open the <b>Select Pool</b> window.  |
| Snapshot Group                             | Specifies whether to create a new snapshot group or to use an existing one.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Create New:</b> Enter the values of the snapshot group you want to create in Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume, Prefix, and Initial Number, and then select Snapshot Group Configuration.</li> <li>• <b>Use Existing:</b> Select Snapshot Group Configuration, and then select the snapshot group you want to use from the Available Snapshot Groups table. If you select All in Snapshot Group Configuration, enter a value for Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume.</li> </ul>   |
| Number of Snapshot Data per Primary Volume | The number of snapshot data per primary volume.   |
| Snapshot Group Configuration               | The configuration of the snapshot data.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>P-VOL Straddle:</b> When you select Create New in Snapshot Group, creates a snapshot group that straddles multiple primary volumes. When you select Use Existing in Snapshot Group, adds snapshot data to an existing snapshot group that you select in the Available Snapshot Groups table as straddling multiple primary volumes.</li> <li>• <b>Per P-VOL:</b> Creates a snapshot group for each primary volume. You can select this option if you select Create New in Snapshot Group.</li> <li>• <b>All:</b> When you select Create New in Snapshot Group, creates a new snapshot group and adds all snapshot data to it. When you select Use Existing in Snapshot Group, adds all snapshot data to an existing snapshot group.</li> </ul> |
| Prefix                                     | The fixed character prefix of the snapshot group.   |

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Initial number | The initial number of the snapshot group.  |
| Add button     | Click to move the selected volumes from the Available Primary Volumes table to the Selected Primary Volumes table. |

### Available Snapshot Groups table

The following table lists the items in the Available Snapshot Groups table on the Create TI Pairs window.

This table is displayed if you select Use Existing in Snapshot Group.

| Item               | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Snapshot Group     | The snapshot group name.  |
| Number of Pairs    | The number of snapshot group pairs.   |
| New Snapshot Group | Indicates whether the snapshot group is new or existing.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes:</b> Newly created snapshot group.</li> <li>• <b>No:</b> Already defined snapshot group.</li> </ul> |

### Available Primary Volumes table

The following table lists the items in the Available Primary Volumes table on the Create TI Pairs window.

| Item                                 | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| LDEV ID                              | The LDEV's identification number which can be specified as the P-VOL.   |
| LDEV Name                            | The LDEV's name.  |
| Port ID                              | The port name of the LDEV's LUN path.   |
| Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the LDEV's LUN path.   |
| iSCSI Target Name                    | The iSCSI target name.  |
| LUN ID                               | The LUN identification number of the LDEV's LUN path.   |
| Provisioning Type                    | The LDEV's provisioning type.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume.</li> <li>• <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL.</li> <li>• <b>External:</b> External volume.</li> <li>• <b>ALU:</b> ALU attribute volume.</li> </ul> |
| Attribute                            | The LDEV's attribute.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ALU:</b> ALU attribute volume.</li> <li>• <b>SLU:</b> SLU attribute volume.</li> </ul>   |

| Item                    | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
|                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Data Direct Mapping:</b> Data Direct Mapping attribute volume.</li> </ul> <p>If the volume does not have any attribute specified, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>   |
| Capacity                | The capacity of the LDEV.  |
| CLPR                    | The LDEV's CLPR ID.  |
| Encryption              | <p>The LDEV's encryption information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |
| T10 PI                  | <p>VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.</p> <p>The LDEV's T10 PI information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> The LDEV's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The LDEV's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul>   |
| Number of Snapshot Data | The number of snapshot data to which the LDEV belongs.   |
| Primary Volumes         | <p>If you use the LDEV as an S-VOL for an existing pair, information about the P-VOL is displayed.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The LDEV's identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The LDEV's name.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The LDEV's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The LDEV's CLPR ID.</li> </ul>  |
| Pool Name (ID)          | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit             | <p>The mirror unit number.</p> <p>If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>  |



## Selected Primary Volumes table

The following table lists the items in the Selected LDEVs table on the **Select Primary Volumes** window.

| Item                                 | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| LDEV ID                              | The selected P-VOL's LDEV identification number.   |
| LDEV Name                            | The selected P-VOL's LDEV name.  |
| Port ID                              | The port name of the LDEV's LUN path.  |
| Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the LDEV's LUN path.  |
| iSCSI Target Name                    | The iSCSI target name.   |
| LUN ID                               | The LUN identification number of the LDEV's LUN path.  |
| Attribute                            | <p>The LDEV's attribute.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ALU:</b> ALU attribute volume.</li> <li>• <b>SLU:</b> SLU attribute volume.</li> <li>• <b>Data Direct Mapping:</b> Data Direct Mapping attribute volume.</li> </ul> <p>If the volume does not have any attribute specified, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>   |
| Capacity                             | The capacity of the LDEV.  |
| Encryption                           | <p>The LDEV's encryption information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |
| T10 PI                               | <p>VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.</p> <p>The LDEV's T10 PI information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> The LDEV's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The LDEV's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group                       | The snapshot group name.   |
| New Snapshot Group                   | <p>Indicates whether the snapshot group is new or existing.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes:</b> Newly created snapshot group.</li> </ul>   |

| Item                    | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
|                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>No:</b> Already defined snapshot group.</li> </ul>  |
| Number of Snapshot Data | The number of snapshot data.  |
| Pool Name (ID)          | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Pool Encryption         | <p>The pool's encryption information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li><b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li><b>Mixed:</b> A pool contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled, or volumes for which encryption is specified and an external volume.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>For pools created in external volumes, or blocked pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |
| Remove button           | Click to remove the selected row from the Selected Primary Volumes table.   |

## Assign Secondary Volumes window

Use this window to select the LDEVs that are the S-VOL.

This window is the second window of the Create TI Pairs wizard.

The following image shows this window.

**Create TI Pairs**

1. Create TI Pairs > **2. Assign Secondary Volumes** > 3. Confirm

This wizard lets you assign secondary volumes to pairs. Select LDEVs from the Available LDEVs list, and then click Set. Click Finish to confirm.

Capacity:

☒ Exclude Assigned Volumes    Selection Object:     Port ID:     Host Group Name:

**Available LDEVs**

| LDEV ID                           | LDEV Name | Port ID | Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | iSCSI Target Name | LUN ID | Capacity | CLPR      | T10 PI   | Snapshot Group | Status | Snapshot Date |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|---------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|----------|-----------|----------|----------------|--------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 00:03:00 |           | CL1-B   | 1B-G00 (00)                          | -                 | 5      | 10.00 GB | 0:CLPR... | Enabled  |                |        |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 00:03:01 |           | CL1-B   | 1B-G00 (00)                          | -                 | 6      | 10.00 GB | 0:CLPR... | Enabled  |                |        |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 00:03:0A |           | CL1-B   | 1B-G00 (00)                          | -                 | 7      | 10.00 GB | 0:CLPR... | Disabled |                |        |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 00:03:0B |           | CL1-B   | 1B-G00 (00)                          | -                 | 8      | 10.00 GB | 0:CLPR... | Disabled |                |        |               |

Selected: 0 of 4

**Selected Pairs**

| Primary Volume                               |           |         |                                      |                   |        |           |          |           |          |                | Secondary Volume       |         |
|--|-----------|---------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|----------------|------------------------|---------|
| LDEV ID                                      | LDEV Name | Port ID | Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | iSCSI Target Name | LUN ID | Attribute | Capacity | CLPR      | T10 PI   | Snapshot Group | Snapshot Data Seq. No. | LDEV ID |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 00:02:0B |           | CL1-B   | 1B-G00 (00)                          | -                 | 4      | -         | 10.00 GB | 0:CLPR... | Disabled | TI             | (0)                    |         |

Selected: 0 of 1

The following table shows the items in this window.

| Item                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Capacity                 | Click to select the capacity for which to filter the available LDEVs.   |
| Exclude Assigned Volumes | Hide volumes that are already paired from the Selected Pairs table.   |
| Selection Object         | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br><br>Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table according to port type.   |
| Port ID                  | Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table by the Port ID.  |
| Host Group Name          | Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table by the Host Group Name. This item is displayed if you select a Fibre Channel port for Port ID.<br><br>Default: Any   |
| iSCSI Target Alias       | Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table by the iSCSI target alias. This item is displayed if you select an iSCSI port for Port ID.<br><br>Default: Any   |
| Set button               | Click to move an LDEV that you have selected in the Available LDEVs table to the Selected Pairs table.<br><br>You can also click to configure a pair you have selected in the Available LDEVs table and a pair you have selected in the Selected Pairs table. |
| Clear button             | Click to move the selected S-VOL from the Selected Pairs table back to the Available LDEVs table.   |

### Available LDEVs table

The following table lists the items in the Available LDEVs table on the **Assign Secondary Volumes** window.

| Item                                 | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| LDEV ID                              | The LDEV identification number, which you can specify as the S-VOL.             |
| LDEV Name                            | The LDEV's name.  |
| Port ID                              | The port name of the LDEV's LUN path.   |
| Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the LDEV's LUN path. |
| iSCSI Target Name                    | The iSCSI target name.  |
| LUN ID                               | The LUN identification number of the LDEV's LUN path.                           |
| Capacity                             | The LDEV's capacity.  |

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| CLPR           | The LDEV's CLPR ID.   |
| T10 PI         | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br>The LDEV's T10 PI information.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b> : The LDEV's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>: The LDEV's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul>  |
| Snapshot Group | The snapshot group name.<br><br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.   |
| Status         | The pair status.<br><br>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .  |
| Snapshot Date  | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |
| Primary Volume | The P-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID</b>: The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name</b>: The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID</b>: The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias</b>: The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name</b>: The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID</b>: The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity</b>: The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR</b>: The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID) | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Mirror Unit    | The mirror unit number.   |

### Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Assign Secondary Volumes** window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Primary Volume | The P-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID</b> : The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name</b> : The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID</b> : The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> </ul> |

| Item                   | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
|                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> : The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> : The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> : The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group         | The snapshot group name.   |
| Snapshot Data Seq. No. | The sequence number of snapshot data.  |
| Secondary Volume       | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, this item is blank.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The S-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID)         | The pool name and identification number.   |

## Create TI Pairs confirmation window

This window is the third and last window of the Create TI Pairs wizard.

The following image shows this window.



| Item            | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |
| Pool Name (ID)  | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Pool Encryption | <p>The pool's encryption information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li>• <b>Mixed:</b> A pool contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled, or volumes for which encryption is specified and an external volume.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>For pools created in external volumes, blocked pools, and non-HTI pairs, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |

### Remove Secondary Volumes table

This table is displayed if a volume is selected that was already assigned to other snapshot data (by leaving the Exclude Assigned Volumes check box unselected in the **Assign Secondary Volumes** window).

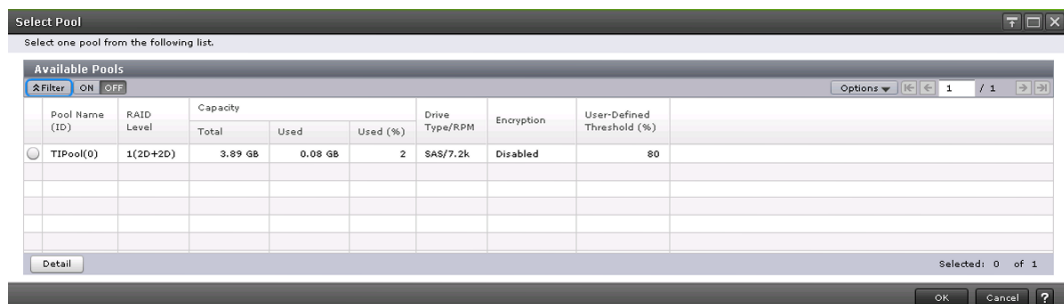
The following table lists the items in this table on the **Confirm** window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| LDEV ID        | The LDEV identification number, which you can specify as the S-VOL.   |
| LDEV Name      | The LDEV's name.  |
| Attribute      | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br>The LDEV's attribute.  |
| Capacity       | The LDEV's capacity.  |
| CLPR           | The LDEV's CLPR ID.   |
| Remount Device | Indicates whether remounting the device is required.  |
| Snapshot Group | The snapshot group name.<br><br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair. |
| Status         | The pair status.  |

| Item            | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
|                 | For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .   |
| Snapshot Date   | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.  |
| Primary Volume  | The P-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul>   |
| Pool Name (ID)  | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit     | The mirror unit number.<br><br>If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.   |
| Pool Encryption | The pool's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li>• <b>Mixed:</b> A pool contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled, or volumes for which encryption is specified and an external volume.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>For pools created in external volumes, or blocked pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> |

## Select Pool window

The following image shows the **Select Pool** window, which includes the Available Pools table.





## Available Pools table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Select Pool** window.

| Item                       | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Pool Name (ID)             | The pool name and identification number.  |
| RAID Level                 | The RAID level of the pool.   |
| Capacity                   | <p>The pool capacity.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Total:</b> The total pool capacity.</li><li>• <b>Used:</b> The amount of pool capacity that is used.</li><li>• <b>Used (%):</b> The percentage of pool capacity that is use.</li></ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This number is truncated to an integer.</p>  |
| Drive Type/RPM             | <p>The data drive type and RPM.</p> <p>For more information about data drive type, see <a href="#">Pool creation and data drive type priority on page 74</a>.</p>   |
| Encryption                 | <p>The pool's encryption information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li><li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li><li>• <b>Mixed:</b> A pool contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled, or volumes for which encryption is specified and an external volume.</li></ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>For pools created in external volumes, or blocked pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> |
| User-Defined Threshold (%) | The threshold you configure.  |
| Detail button              | <p>Click to open the <b>Pool Property</b> window.</p> <p>For more information about this window, see the <i>Provisioning Guide</i> of your storage system.</p>  |

## Split Pairs wizard

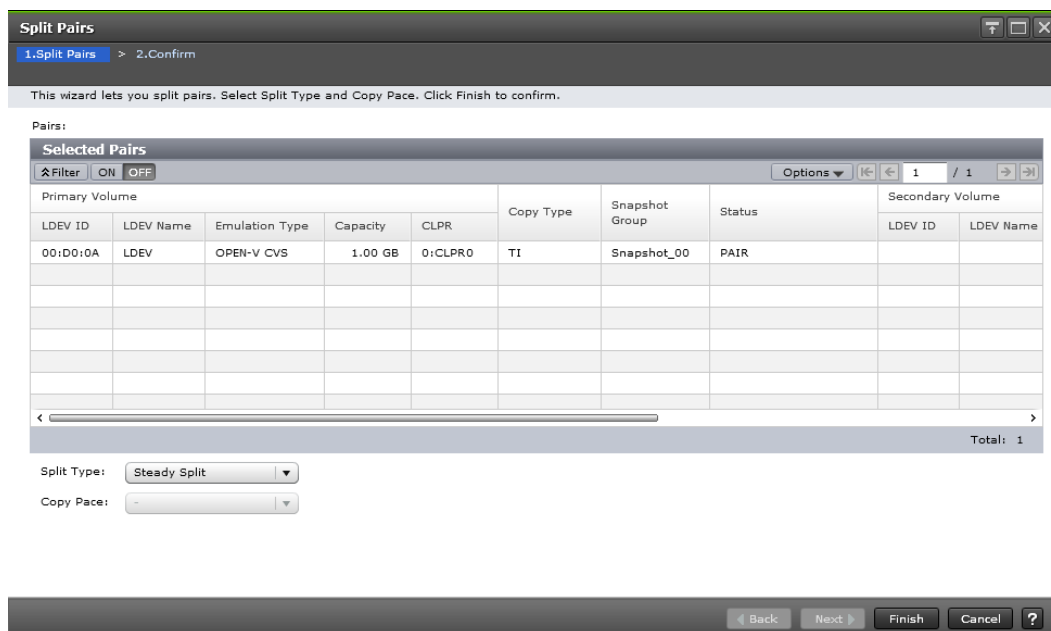
Use this wizard to split pairs.

### Related tasks

- [Splitting Thin Image pairs to store snapshot data](#) on page 104

## Split Pairs window

The following image shows this window, which is the first window of the **Split Pairs** wizard.



## Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Split Pairs** window.

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Primary Volume   | <p>P-VOL information for the pairs you have selected to split.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Copy Type        | <p>The volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li> </ul>  |
| Snapshot Group   | <p>The snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>   |
| Status           | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>   |
| Secondary Volume | <p>The S-VOL information for the pairs you have selected to split.</p> <p>Values:</p>  |

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul>  |
| Pool Name (ID) | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Mirror Unit    | The mirror unit number.   |
| Split Type     | <p>The mode in which you want to split the selected pairs.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Quick Split:</b> The pair is split and then remaining differential data is copied to the S-VOL in the background. Specify this value when you want to write to or read from the S-VOL immediately after splitting a pair.</li> <li>• <b>Steady Split:</b> The differential data is copied to the S-VOL and then the pair is split.<br/> <b>Note:</b> This value is only available if you specify the copy type as TI.</li> </ul> <p>Default: Steady Split</p> |
| Copy Pace      | <p>The speed at which the S-VOL is copied.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>  |

## Split Pairs confirmation window

The following image shows the **Confirm** window, which is the second and last window of the **Split Pairs** wizard.

Split Pairs

1.Split Pairs > 2.Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name:  (Max. 32 Characters)

| Selected Pairs |           |                |          |         | Copy Type | Snapshot Group | Status | Split Type   | Copy Pace |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|----------|---------|-----------|----------------|--------|--------------|-----------|
| LDEV ID        | LDEV Name | Emulation Type | Capacity | CLPR    |           |                |        |              |           |
| 00:D0:0A       | LDEV      | OPEN-V CVS     | 1.00 GB  | 0:CLPR0 | TI        | Snapshot_00    | PAIR   | Steady Split | -         |
| Total: 1       |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |              |           |

☒ Go to tasks window for status

### Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Confirm** window.

| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Primary Volume   | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Copy Type        | <p>The volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group   | <p>The snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>  |
| Status           | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>  |
| Split Type       | <p>The split type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Quick Split:</b> The pair is split and then remaining differential data is copied to the S-VOL in the background. Specify this value when you want to write to or read from the S-VOL immediately after splitting a pair.</li> <li>• <b>Steady Split:</b> The differential data is copied to the S-VOL and then the pair is split.</li> </ul>   |
| Copy Pace        | <p>The speed at which the S-VOL is copied.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>  |
| Secondary Volume | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID)   | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Mirror Unit      | The mirror unit number.   |

## Resync Pairs wizard

Use this wizard to resynchronize pairs.

## Related concepts

- [Thin Image pair resynchronization](#) on page 110

## Resync Pairs window

The following image shows this window, which is the first window of the **Resync Pairs** wizard.

The screenshot shows the 'Resync Pairs' window with the '1. Resync Pairs' tab selected. Below the title bar, a message states: 'This wizard lets you re-synchronize pairs. Select Resync Type and Copy Pace. Click Finish to confirm.' The main area is titled 'Pairs:' and contains a 'Selected Pairs' table. The table has columns: LDEV ID, LDEV Name, Emulation Type, Capacity, CLPR, Copy Type, Snapshot Group, Status, and Snapshot Date. One row is visible with the following data: LDEV ID: 00:D0:0B, LDEV Name: LDEV, Emulation Type: OPEN-V CVS, Capacity: 1.00 GB, CLPR: 0:CLPR0, Copy Type: TI, Snapshot Group: Snapshot\_00, Status: PSUS, Snapshot Date: 2014/10/29 09:56:39. Below the table, there are two dropdown menus: 'Resync Type' set to 'Normal Copy (Primary > Secondary)' and 'Copy Pace' set to '-'. At the bottom right, it says 'Total: 1'. At the very bottom of the window, there are buttons for 'Back', 'Next', 'Finish', 'Cancel', and a help icon.

## Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Resync Pairs** window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Primary Volume | The P-VOL information.<br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li><li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li><li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li><li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li><li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li><li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li></ul> |
| Copy Type      | The volume's copy type.<br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li></ul>  |
| Snapshot Group | The snapshot group name.  |

| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
|                  | Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.   |
| Status           | The pair status.<br><br>For more information, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .  |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |
| Secondary Volume | The S-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul>                |
| Pool Name (ID)   | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Mirror Unit      | The mirror unit number.   |
| Resync Type      | The type of resynchronization.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Normal Copy (Primary &gt; Secondary):</b> A full forward resynchronization of data from the P-VOL to the S-VOL.</li> <li>• <b>Reverse Copy (Secondary &gt; Primary):</b> A full restoration of P-VOL data from the S-VOL. The differential data is updated on the P-VOL.</li> </ul><br>For more information about the types of pair resynchronization, see the <i>Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide</i> . |
| Copy Pace        | The speed at which the S-VOL is copied.<br><br>A hyphen (-) is displayed.   |

## Resync Pairs confirmation window

The following image shows the **Confirm** window, which is the second and last window of the **Resync Pairs** wizard.

**Resync Pairs**

1. Resync Pairs > **2. Confirm**

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name:  (Max. 32 Characters)

| Selected Pairs |           |                |          |         | Copy Type | Snapshot Group | Status | Resync Type              |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|----------|---------|-----------|----------------|--------|--------------------------|
| Primary Volume |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |                          |
| LDEV ID        | LDEV Name | Emulation Type | Capacity | CLPR    |           |                |        |                          |
| 00:D0:0B       | LDEV      | OPEN-V CVS     | 1.00 GB  | 0:CLPR0 | TI        | Snapshot_00    | PSUS   | Normal Copy (Primary > S |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |                          |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |                          |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |                          |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |                          |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |        |                          |

Total: 1

☒ Go to tasks window for status   **Back**   **Next**   **Apply**   **Cancel**   ?

## Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table in the **Confirm** window of the **Resync Pairs** wizard.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li><b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li><b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li><b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li><b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li><b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Copy Type      | <p>The volume's copy type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group | <p>The snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>  |
| Status         | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>  |
| Resync Type    | <p>The type of resynchronization.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Normal Copy (Primary &gt; Secondary):</b> A full forward resynchronization of data from the P-VOL to the S-VOL.</li> <li><b>Reverse Copy (Secondary &gt; Primary):</b> A full restoration of P-VOL data from the S-VOL. The differential data is updated on the P-VOL.</li> </ul>  |

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
|                  | For more information about the types of pair resynchronization, see the <i>Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide</i> .   |
| Copy Pace        | The speed at which the S-VOL is copied.<br>A hyphen (-) is displayed.  |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.  |
| Secondary Volume | The S-VOL information.<br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID)   | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit      | The mirror unit number.  |

## Delete Pairs window

Use this window to delete pairs and to restore pairs.

For more information about deleting pairs, see [Deleting Thin Image pairs on page 113](#).

The following image shows this window.

**Delete Pairs**

1. Confirm

⚠ This wizard lets you confirm the selected pairs you want to delete. Are you sure you want to continue?

Task Name:  (Max. 32 Characters)

| Selected Pairs |           |                |          |         | Copy Type | Snapshot Group |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|----------|---------|-----------|----------------|
| Primary Volume |           |                |          |         |           |                |
| LDEV ID        | LDEV Name | Emulation Type | Capacity | CLPR    |           |                |
| 00:D0:0A       | LDEV      | OPEN-V CVS     | 1.00 GB  | 0:CLPR0 | TI        | Snapshot_00    |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |
|                |           |                |          |         |           |                |

Total: 1

☒ Go to tasks window for status   Back   Next   Apply   Cancel   ?



## Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table in the **Delete Pairs** wizard.

| Item             | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Primary Volume   | The P-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li><li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li><li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The P-VOL's emulation type.</li><li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li><li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li><li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li></ul> |
| Copy Type        | The volume's copy type.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>TI:</b> HTI pair</li></ul>  |
| Snapshot Group   | The snapshot group name.<br><br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.   |
| Status           | The pair status.<br><br>For more information, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .  |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |
| Secondary Volume | The S-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li><li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li><li>• <b>Emulation Type:</b> (VSP G1000 only) The S-VOL's emulation type.</li><li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li><li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li><li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li></ul> |
| Pool Name (ID)   | The pool name and identification number.  |
| Mirror Unit      | The mirror unit number.   |

## Related concepts

- [Deleting Thin Image pairs](#) on page 113

## Edit Local Replica Options wizard

Use this wizard to set the system options that affect performance in HTI.

## Related concepts

- [Changing system options that affect Thin Image performance](#) on page 90

## Edit Local Replica Options window

This window is the first window of the **Edit Local Replica Options** wizard.

The following image shows this window.

**Edit Local Replica Options**

1. Edit Local Replica Options > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you edit system options. Select the system options you want to edit in the System Options list and click Enable or Disable. Click Finish to confirm.

System Type: ☒ Open ☐ Mainframe

| System Option                             | Status   |  |
|---|----------|--|
| Swap & Freeze                             | Disabled |  |
| HOST I/O Performance                      | Disabled |  |
| Reserve03                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve04                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve05                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve06                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve07                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve08                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve09                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve10                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve11                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve12                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve13                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve14                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve15                                 | Disabled |  |
| Non-disruptive Migration Data Consistency | Disabled |  |
| Reserve17                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve18                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve19                                 | Disabled |  |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower1                    | Disabled |  |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower2                    | Disabled |  |
| Copy Pace Ext. None                       | Disabled |  |
| Reserve23                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve24                                 | Disabled |  |

Enable Disable Selected: 0 of 32

Back Next Finish Cancel ?

## Setting fields (VSP G1000 only)

The following table lists the items in the **Edit Local Replica Options** window of the **Edit Local Replica Options** wizard.

| Item        | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| System Type | <p>The storage system type.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Open:</b> Select when you want to change system options that affect SI and HTI performance.</li> <li>• <b>Mainframe:</b> Select when you want to change system options that affect SIz, FCv2, and FCSE performance.</li> </ul> <p>Default: Open</p> |

### SI/TI System Options table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Edit Local Replica Options** window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| System Option  | <p>The defined system option.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Swap &amp; Freeze:</b> Quick Restores and then saves the current data. Used with the Quick Restore, inhibits the Update Copy operation after performing Quick Restore, and the paired S-VOL in "PAIR" status is not updated.</li> <li>• <b>Host I/O Performance:</b> Use this option to give weight to I/O response rather than the copy time. This option controls copy operations and improves the host I/O response.</li> <li>• <b>Non-disruptive Migration Data Consistency:</b> Use this option to keep the latest data in the migration source storage system instead of distributing data in both the destination and source storage systems during data migration.</li> <li>• <b>Copy Pace Ext. Slower1, Copy Pace Ext. Slower2, Copy Pace Ext. None:</b> Reducing the copy volume in "PAIR" status curbs the influence to the I/O performance of the host server. This item is available to all pairs in "PAIR" status. The order of Copy Pace Ext. Slower1, Copy Pace Ext. Slower2, and Copy Pace Ext. None determines the host server's I/O performance.</li> </ul> |
| Status         | Shows whether the system option is currently enabled or disabled.   |
| Enable button  | Click to enable the selected option.  |
| Disable button | Click to disable the selected option.   |

### SIMF/FCv2/FCSE System Options table (VSP G1000 only)

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Edit Local Replica Options** window.

| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| System Option | <p>Options that you can change.</p> <p>Values:</p> |

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Swap &amp; Freeze:</b> Quick Restores and then saves the current data. Used with the Quick Restore, inhibits the Update Copy operation after performing Quick Restore, and the paired S-VOL (T-VOL for FCv2 or FCSE) is not updated.</li> <li>• <b>Host I/O Performance:</b> Use this option to give weight to I/O response rather than the copy time. This option controls copy operations and improves the host I/O response.</li> <li>• <b>FC Slower Copy1 (FCv2 or FCSE only):</b> Reduces the multiplicity of background copy into half.</li> <li>• <b>FC Slower Copy 2 (FCv2 or FCSE only):</b> Reduces the multiplicity of background copy into quarter.</li> <li>• <b>FC Ext. Slower Copy1:</b> Inhibits background copy and improves host I/O response when the operating ratio of the MP blade (FCv2 or FCSE S-VOL or T-VOL is allocated) exceeds 65%.</li> <li>• <b>FC Ext. Slower Copy2:</b> Inhibits background copy and improves host I/O response when the operating ratio of the MP blade (FCv2 or FCSE S-VOL or T-VOL is allocated) exceeds 50%.</li> <li>• <b>Copy Pace Ext. Slower1, Copy Pace Ext. Slower2, Copy Pace Ext. None:</b> Reducing the copy volume in the "DUPLEX" status curbs the influence to the I/O performance of the host server. This item is available to all pairs in "DUPLEX" status. The I/O performance of the host server is improved in order of Copy Pace Ext. Slower1, Copy Pace Ext. Slower2, and Copy Pace Ext. None.</li> </ul> |
| Status         | Shows whether the option is currently enabled or disabled.   |
| Enable button  | Click to enable the selected option.   |
| Disable button | Click to disable the selected option.  |

## Edit Local Replica Options confirmation window

This window is the second and last window of the **Edit Local Replica Options** wizard.

The following image shows this window.

Edit Local Replica Options

1.Edit Local Replica Options > 2.Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name:

150803-EditLocalReplicaOptions

(Max. 32 Characters)

SI/TI System Options

| System Option                             | Status   |  |
|---|----------|--|
| Swap & Freeze                             | Disabled |  |
| HOST I/O Performance                      | Disabled |  |
| Reserve03                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve04                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve05                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve06                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve07                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve08                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve09                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve10                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve11                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve12                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve13                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve14                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve15                                 | Disabled |  |
| Non-disruptive Migration Data Consistency | Enabled  |  |
| Reserve17                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve18                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve19                                 | Disabled |  |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower1                    | Disabled |  |
| Copy Pace Ext. Slower2                    | Disabled |  |
| Copy Pace Ext. None                       | Disabled |  |
| Reserve23                                 | Disabled |  |
| Reserve24                                 | Disabled |  |

Total: 32

☐ Go to tasks window for status

Back

Next

Apply

Cancel

?

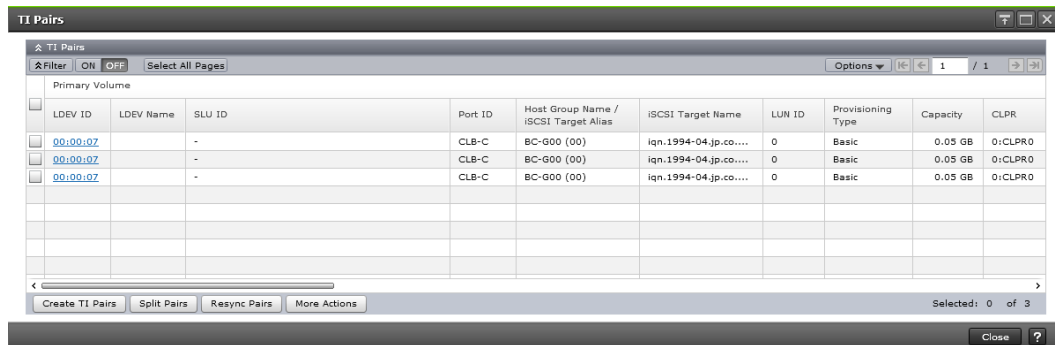
## SI/TI or SIMF/FCv2/FCSE System Options table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Confirm** window of the **Edit Local Replica Options** wizard.

| Item          | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| System Option | Options that can be changed.                               |
| Status        | Shows whether the option is currently enabled or disabled. |

## TI Pairs window

The following image shows the TI Pairs window.



The following table lists the items in the TI Pairs table on the TI Pairs window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>SLU ID:</b> The P-VOL's SLU ID. If the SLU attribute is not specified for the P-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Provisioning Type:</b> The P-VOL's provisioning type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Basic:</b> Internal volume</li> <li>○ <b>DP:</b> DP-VOL</li> <li>○ <b>External:</b> External volume</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>Encryption:</b> The P-VOL's encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for the parity group to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs, or a V-VOL is associated with a pool in which a pool volume has encryption disabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Mixed:</b> The pool to which the P-VOL's LDEV belongs contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
|                  | <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>If the LDEV is an external volume or migration volume (VSP G1000 only), a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>For DP-VOLs, the pool to which an LDEV belongs is an external volume or blocked.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the P-VOL belongs.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the P-VOL's virtual LDEV.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the P-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the P-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Snapshot Group   | The snapshot group name.   |
| Status           | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>   |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time you split the pairs to store snapshot data.  |
| Snapshot SLU ID  | The snapshot data SLU ID. If the SLU attribute is not specified for the snapshot data, a hyphen (-) is displayed.  |
| Secondary Volume | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. Click to open the <b>LDEV Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The S-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Virtual Storage Machine:</b> The model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the S-VOL belongs.</li> </ul>  |

| Item                   | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
|                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Virtual LDEV ID:</b> The identification number of the S-VOL's virtual LDEV.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual Device Name:</b> The name of the S-VOL's virtual device, in a combined format of "virtual emulation type", "number of virtual LUSE volumes", and "virtual CVS attribute". Each of these three items is displayed only if it is specified. If none of them are specified, a blank is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Virtual SSID:</b> The virtual SSID of the S-VOL. If no virtual SSID is specified, a blank is displayed.</li> </ul>  |
| Pool Name (ID)         | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Pool Encryption        | <p>The pool's encryption information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled :</b> Encryption is enabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Encryption is disabled for a pool created by the pool volume.</li> <li>• <b>Mixed:</b> A pool contains both pool volumes for which encryption is enabled and ones for which encryption is disabled, or volumes for which encryption is specified and an external volume.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Data encryption is not ensured in an LDEV with Mixed encryption status.</p> <p>For pools created in external volumes, or blocked pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>This item is not displayed for VSP G200.</p>              |
| CTG ID                 | The consistency group identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit            | The mirror unit number.  |
| Create TI Pairs button | Click to open the Create TI Pairs window.  |
| Split Pairs button     | Click to open the <b>Split Pairs</b> window.   |
| Resync Pairs button    | Click to open the <b>Resync Pairs</b> window.  |
| More Actions           | <p>Click to view a list of tasks you can perform.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Assign Secondary Volumes:</b> Click to open the <b>Assign Secondary Volumes</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Remove Secondary Volumes:</b> Click to open the <b>Remove Secondary Volumes</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Delete Pairs:</b> Click to open the <b>Delete Pairs</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>View Pair Synchronization Rate:</b> Click to open the <b>View Pair Synchronization Rate</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>View Pair Properties:</b> Click to open the <b>View Pair Properties</b> window.</li> <li>• <b>Export:</b> Click to open the dialog from which you can download table information to a file.</li> </ul> |

## Assign Secondary Volumes wizard



## Related tasks

- [Assigning secondary volumes to snapshot data of existing Thin Image pairs](#) on page 117
- [Changing assignment of secondary volumes to Thin Image pair snapshot data](#) on page 119

## Assign Secondary Volumes window

This window is the first window of the Assign Secondary Volumes wizard. The following image shows this window.

The following table lists the items on this window.

| Item                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Capacity                 | Click to select the capacity for which to filter the available LDEVs.   |
| Exclude Assigned Volumes | Hide volumes that are already paired from the Selected Pairs table.   |
| Selection Object         | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br>Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table according to port type. |
| Port ID                  | Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table by the Port ID.  |
| Host Group Name          | Filters LDEVs in the Available LDEVs table by the Host Group Name.  |

| Item         | Description   |
|--------------|---|
|              | Default: Any  |
| Set button   | Click to move an LDEV that you have selected in the Available LDEVs table to the Selected Pairs table.<br><br>You can also click to configure a pair you have selected in the Available LDEVs table and a pair you have selected in the Selected Pairs table. |
| Clear button | Click to move the selected S-VOL from the Selected Pairs table back to the Available LDEVs table.   |

### Available LDEVs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the Assign Secondary Volumes window.

| Item                                 | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| LDEV ID                              | The LDEV identification number, which you can specify as the S-VOL.  |
| LDEV Name                            | The LDEV's name.   |
| Port ID                              | The port name of the LDEV's LUN path.  |
| Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias | The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the LDEV's LUN path.  |
| iSCSI Target Name                    | The iSCSI target name.   |
| LUN ID                               | The LUN identification number of the LDEV's LUN path.  |
| Capacity                             | The LDEV's capacity.   |
| CLPR                                 | The LDEV's CLPR ID.  |
| T10 PI                               | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br><br>The LDEV's T10 PI information.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled :</b> The LDEV's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li><b>Disabled:</b> The LDEV's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> |
| Snapshot Group                       | The snapshot group name.<br><br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.  |
| Status                               | The pair status.<br><br>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .   |
| Snapshot Date                        | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.  |
| Primary Volume                       | The P-VOL information.<br><br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> </ul>  |

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID) | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit    | <p>The mirror unit number.</p> <p>If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>  |

### Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the Assign Secondary Volumes window.

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>○ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Snapshot Group | <p>The snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>   |
| Status         | The pair status.   |

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
|                  | For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .   |
| Snapshot Date    | The date and time you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |
| Secondary Volume | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, this item is blank.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The S-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID)   | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit      | <p>The mirror unit number.</p> <p>If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>  |

## Assign Secondary Volumes confirmation window

This window is the second window of the Assign Secondary Volumes wizard. The following image shows this window.

## Selected Pairs table

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Confirm** window.

| Item             | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Primary Volume   | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> The port name of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The P-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the P-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The P-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |
| Snapshot Group   | <p>The snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>   |
| Status           | <p>The pair status.</p> <p>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a>.</p>   |
| Secondary Volume | <p>The S-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV identification number. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, this item is blank.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The S-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Port ID:</b> Port name of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias:</b> The host group name and ID or iSCSI target alias and ID of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>iSCSI Target Name:</b> The S-VOL's iSCSI target name.</li> <li>• <b>LUN ID:</b> The LUN identification number of the S-VOL LDEV's LUN path.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The S-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The S-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> <li>• <b>T10 PI:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The S-VOL's T10 PI information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Enabled :</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is enabled.</li> <li>◦ <b>Disabled:</b> The S-VOL's T10 PI is disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

| Item           | Description                              |
|----------------|--|
| Pool Name (ID) | The pool name and identification number. |
| Mirror Unit    | The mirror unit number.                  |

### Remove Secondary Volumes table

This table is displayed if a volume is selected that was already assigned to other snapshot data (by leaving the Exclude Assigned Volumes check box unselected in the **Assign Secondary Volumes** window).

The following table lists the items in this table on the **Confirm** window.

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| LDEV ID        | The LDEV identification number, which you can specify as the S-VOL.  |
| LDEV Name      | The LDEV's name.   |
| Attribute      | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br>The LDEV's attribute.   |
| Capacity       | The LDEV's capacity.   |
| CLPR           | The LDEV's CLPR ID.  |
| Remount Device | Indicates whether remounting the device is required.   |
| Snapshot Group | The snapshot group name.<br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.  |
| Status         | The pair status.<br>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .   |
| Snapshot Date  | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.  |
| Primary Volume | The P-VOL information.<br>Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Attribute:</b> (VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only) The P-VOL's attribute.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID) | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit    | The mirror unit number.<br><br>If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.   |

## Remove Secondary Volumes window

The following image shows this window.

**Remove Secondary Volumes**

**1. Confirm**

⚠ The selected secondary volumes will be deleted from the selected pairs. Are you sure to continue?

Task Name:  (Max. 32 Characters)

| LDEV ID  | LDEV Name | Capacity | CLPR    | Snapshot Group | Status | Snapshot Date |
|----------|-----------|----------|---------|----------------|--------|---------------|
| 00:D0:14 | LDEV      | 1.00 GB  | 0:CLPR0 | snapg          | PAIR   | -             |
| 00:D0:15 | LDEV      | 1.00 GB  | 0:CLPR0 | snapg          | PAIR   | -             |
|          |           |          |         |                |        |               |
|          |           |          |         |                |        |               |
|          |           |          |         |                |        |               |
|          |           |          |         |                |        |               |
|          |           |          |         |                |        |               |

Total: 2

☒ Go to tasks window for status   Back   Next   Apply   Cancel   ?

### Selected Secondary Volumes table

The following table lists the items in this window on the Remove Secondary Volumes window.

| Item           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| LDEV ID        | The LDEV identification number, which you can specify as the S-VOL.   |
| LDEV Name      | The LDEV's name.  |
| Attribute      | VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models only.<br>The LDEV's attribute.  |
| Capacity       | The LDEV's capacity.  |
| CLPR           | The LDEV's CLPR ID.   |
| Snapshot Group | The snapshot group name.<br>Information is displayed for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair. |
| Status         | The pair status.<br>For more information about pair status, see <a href="#">Thin Image pair status definitions on page 127</a> .  |
| Snapshot Date  | The date and time that you created the pair to store snapshot data.   |

| Item           | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Primary Volume | <p>The P-VOL information.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LDEV ID:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV identification number.</li> <li>• <b>LDEV Name:</b> The P-VOL's LDEV name. If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</li> <li>• <b>Capacity:</b> The P-VOL's capacity.</li> <li>• <b>CLPR:</b> The P-VOL's CLPR ID.</li> </ul> |
| Pool Name (ID) | The pool name and identification number.   |
| Mirror Unit    | <p>The mirror unit number.</p> <p>If you have not allocated an LDEV to the S-VOL for an existing pair, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>  |

### Related tasks

- [Releasing assignment of secondary volumes from Thin Image pair snapshot data](#) on page 118





# Glossary

## #

### 3DC

three-data-center. Refers to the local, intermediate, and remote sites, or data centers, in which TrueCopy and Universal Replicator combine to form a remote replication configuration.

In a 3DC configuration, data is copied from a local site to an intermediate site and then to a remote site (3DC cascade configuration), or from a local site to two separate remote sites (3DC multi-target configuration).

## A

### administrative logical unit (ALU)

An LU used for the conglomerate LUN structure, a SCSI architecture model. In the conglomerate LUN structure, all host access is through the ALU, which functions as a gateway to sort the I/Os for the subsidiary logical units (SLUs) grouped under the ALU.

The host requests I/Os by using SCSI commands to specify the ALU and the SLUs grouped under the ALU. An ALU is called a Protocol Endpoint (PE) in vSphere. See also *subsidiary logical unit (SLU)*.

### ALU

See *administrative logical unit (ALU)*.

## B

### blade

A computer module, generally a single circuit board, used mostly in servers.

## C

### cache logical partition (CLPR)

Consists of virtual cache memory that is set up to be allocated to different hosts in contention for cache memory.

### capacity

The amount of data storage space available on a physical storage device, usually measured in bytes (MB, GB, TB, etc.).

### cascade configuration

In a 3DC cascade configuration for remote replication, data is copied from a local site to an intermediate site and then to a remote site using TrueCopy and Universal Replicator. See also *3DC*.

In a ShadowImage cascade configuration, two layers of secondary volumes can be defined for a single primary volume. Pairs created in the first and second layer are called cascaded pairs.

### cascade function

A ShadowImage function that allows a primary volume (P-VOL) to have up to nine secondary volumes (S-VOLs) in a layered configuration. The first cascade layer (L1) is the original ShadowImage pair with one P-VOL and up to three S-VOLs. The second cascade layer (L2) contains ShadowImage pairs in which the L1 S-VOLs are functioning as the P-VOLs of layer-2 ShadowImage pairs that can have up to two S-VOLs for each P-VOL. See also *root volume*, *node volume*, *leaf volume*, *layer-1 (L1) pair*, and *layer-2 (L2) pair*.

### cascaded pair

A ShadowImage pair in a cascade configuration. See also *cascade configuration*.

### CCI

Command Control Interface

### CG

See *consistency group (CTG)*.

### CLPR

See *cache logical partition (CLPR)*.

**command device**

A dedicated logical volume used only by Command Control Interface and Business Continuity Manager to interface with the storage system. Can be shared by several hosts.

**configuration definition file**

A text file that defines the configuration, parameters, and options of Command Control Interface (CCI) operations. It also defines the connected hosts and the volumes and groups known to the CCI instance.

**consistency group (CTG)**

A group of copy relationships between virtual disks that are managed as a single entity. A group of pairs on which copy operations are performed simultaneously. When a CTG ID is specified for a specific operation, the operation is performed simultaneously on all pairs belonging to the CTG while keeping data consistency.

**copy pair**

A pair of volumes in which one volume contains original data and the other volume contains the copy of the original. Copy operations can be synchronous or asynchronous, and the volumes of the copy pair can be located in the same storage system (local copy) or in different storage systems (remote copy).

A copy pair can also be called a volume pair, or just pair. A pair created by Compatible FlashCopy® is called a relationship.

**copy-on-write (COW)**

Point-in-time snapshot copy of any data volume within a storage system. Copy-on-write snapshots only store changed data blocks, therefore the amount of storage capacity required for each copy is substantially smaller than the source volume.

**COW**

See *copy-on-write (COW)*.

**COW Snapshot**

Copy-on-Write Snapshot

## D

### **data consistency**

When the data on the secondary volume is identical to the data on the primary volume.

### **data path**

The physical paths used by primary storage systems to communicate with secondary storage systems in a remote replication environment.

### **data pool**

One or more logical volumes designated to temporarily store original data. When a snapshot is taken of a primary volume, the data pool is used if a data block in the primary volume is to be updated. The original snapshot of the volume is maintained by storing the changeable data blocks in the data pool.

### **delta resync**

A disaster recovery solution in which TrueCopy and Universal Replicator systems are configured to provide a quick recovery using only differential data stored at an intermediate site.

### **device**

A physical or logical unit with a specific function.

### **device emulation**

Indicates the type of logical volume. Mainframe device emulation types provide logical volumes of fixed size, called logical volume images (LVIs), which contain EBCDIC data in CKD format. Typical mainframe device emulation types include 3390-9 and 3390-M. Open-systems device emulation types provide logical volumes of variable size, called logical units (LUs), that contain ASCII data in FBA format. The typical open-systems device emulation type is OPEN-V.

### **differential data**

Changed data in the primary volume not yet reflected in the secondary volume of a copy pair.

### **disaster recovery**

A set of procedures to recover critical application data and processing after a disaster or other failure.

**disk adapter (DKA)**

The hardware component that controls the transfer of data between the drives and cache. A DKA feature consists of a pair of boards.

**disk controller (DKC)**

The hardware component that manages front-end and back-end storage operations. The term DKC can refer to the entire storage system or to the controller components.

**DKA**

*See disk adapter (DKA).*

**DKC**

*See disk controller (DKC).*

**DKCMAIN**

disk controller main. Refers to the microcode for the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 storage system.

**DP-VOL**

Dynamic Provisioning virtual volume. A virtual volume that has no memory space that is used by Dynamic Provisioning.

**DRU**

Hitachi Data Retention Utility

**Dynamic Provisioning (HDP)**

An approach to managing storage. Instead of "reserving" a fixed amount of storage, it removes capacity from the available pool when data is actually written to disk.

**E****emulation**

The operation of the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform storage system to emulate the characteristics of a different storage system. For device emulation, the mainframe host recognizes the logical devices on the storage system as 3390-x devices. For controller emulation, the mainframe host recognizes the control units (CUs) on the storage system as 2105 or 2107 controllers.

The Virtual Storage Platform storage system operates the same as the storage system being emulated.

**ext.**

external

**external volume**

A logical volume whose data resides on drives that are physically located outside the Hitachi storage system.

**F**

**FC**

Fibre Channel; FlashCopy

**free capacity**

The amount of storage space (in bytes) that is available for use by the host systems.

**G**

**GUI**

graphical user interface

**H**

**HDP**

Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning. See *Dynamic Provisioning*.

**HDS**

Hitachi Data Systems

**HDT**

Hitachi Dynamic Tiering

**HORC**

Hitachi Open Remote Copy. Another name for Hitachi TrueCopy®.

**HORCM**

Hitachi Open Remote Copy Manager. Another name for Command Control Interface.

**host failover**

The process of switching operations from one host to another host when the primary host fails.

**host group**

A group of hosts of the same operating system platform.

**I****I/O**

input/output

**I/O mode**

I/O actions on the primary volume and secondary volume of a global-active device pair.

**in-system replication**

The original data volume and its copy are located in the same storage system. ShadowImage in-system replication provides duplication of logical volumes; Thin Image in-system replication provides "snapshots" of logical volumes that are stored and managed as virtual volumes (V-VOLs).

See also *remote replication*.

**initial copy**

An initial copy operation is performed when a copy pair is created. Data on the primary volume is copied to the secondary volume before any updates are processed.

**intermediate site (I-site)**

A site that functions as both a TrueCopy secondary site and a Universal Replicator primary site in a 3-data-center (3DC) cascading configuration.

**internal volume**

A logical volume whose data resides on drives that are physically located within the storage system. See also *external volume*.

**J****JNLG**

See *journal group (JNLG)*.

## **journal group (JNLG)**

In a Universal Replicator system, journal groups manage data consistency between multiple primary volumes and secondary volumes. See also *consistency group (CTG)*.

## **journal volume**

A volume that records and stores a log of all events that take place in another volume. In the event of a system crash, the journal volume logs are used to restore lost data and maintain data integrity.

In Universal Replicator, differential data is held in journal volumes until you copy it to the S-VOL.

## **L**

### **L1 pair**

See *layer-1 (L1) pair*.

### **L2 pair**

See *layer-2 (L2) pair*.

### **layer-1 (L1) pair**

In a ShadowImage cascade configuration, a layer-1 pair consists of a primary volume and secondary volume in the first cascade layer. You can pair an L1 primary volume with up to three L1 secondary volumes. See also *cascade configuration*.

### **layer-2 (L2) pair**

In a ShadowImage cascade configuration, a layer-2 (L2) pair consists of a primary volume and secondary volume in the second cascade layer. You can pair an L2 primary volume with up to two L2 secondary volumes. See also *cascade configuration*.

### **LBA**

logical block address

### **LDEV**

See *logical device (LDEV)*.

### **LDKC**

See *logical disk controller (LDKC)*.



**leaf volume**

A layer-2 secondary volume in a ShadowImage cascade configuration. The primary volume of a layer-2 pair is called a node volume. See also *cascade configuration*.

**license key**

A specific set of characters that unlocks an application and allows it to be used.

**local copy**

See *in-system replication*.

**logical device (LDEV)**

An individual logical device (on multiple drives in a RAID configuration) in the storage system. An LDEV might or might not contain any data and might or might not be defined to any hosts. Each LDEV has a unique identifier, or address, within the storage system. The identifier is composed of the logical disk controller (LDKC) number, control unit (CU) number, and LDEV number. The LDEV IDs within a storage system do not change.

An LDEV formatted for use by mainframe hosts is called a logical volume image (LVI). An LDEV formatted for use by open-system hosts is called a logical unit (LU).

**logical disk controller (LDKC)**

A group of 255 control unit (CU) images in the RAID storage system that is controlled by a virtual (logical) storage system within the single physical storage system. For example, the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V storage system supports two LDKCs, LDKC 00 and LDKC 01.

**logical unit (LU)**

A volume, or LDEV, created in an open storage system, or configured for use by an open-systems host, for example, OPEN-V.

**logical unit (LU) path**

The path between an open-systems host and a logical unit.

**logical unit number (LUN)**

A unique management number that identifies a logical unit (LU) in a storage system. A logical unit can be an end user, a file, a disk drive, a port, a host group that is assigned to a port, an application, or virtual partitions (or volumes) of a RAID set.

Logical unit numbers (LUNs) are used in SCSI protocols to differentiate disk drives in a common SCSI target device, such as a storage system. An open-systems host uses a LUN to access a particular LU.

**logical volume (LV)**

See *volume*.

**logical volume image (LVI)**

An LDEV that is configured for use by mainframe hosts (for example, 3390-3).

**LU**

See *logical unit (LU)*.

**LUSE**

LUN expansion; LU size expansion

**LUSE volume**

A combined LU composed of multiple OPEN-x devices. A LUSE device can be from 2 to 36 times larger than a fixed-size OPEN-x LU. LUSE lets the host access the data on the storage system using fewer LU numbers.

**LV**

logical volume. See *volume*.

**M****main control unit (MCU)**

A storage system at a primary, or main, site that contains primary volumes of remote replication pairs. The MCU is configured to send remote I/O instructions to one or more storage systems at the secondary, or remote, site, called remote control units (RCUs). RCUs contain the secondary volumes of the remote replication pairs. See also *remote control unit (RCU)*.

**main site**

See *primary site*.

**Mb**

megabit

**MB**

megabyte

**Mbps**

megabits per second

**MBps**

megabytes per second

**MCU**

See *main control unit (MCU)*.

**MF, M/F**

mainframe

**MIH**

missing interrupt handler

**mirror**

In Universal Replicator, each pair relationship in and between journal groups is called a "mirror." Each pair is assigned a mirror ID when it is created. The mirror ID identifies individual pair relationships between journal groups.

**modify mode**

The mode of operation of Device Manager - Storage Navigator that allows changes to the storage system configuration. See also *view mode*.

**MP**

microprocessor

**MU**

mirror unit

**N****node volume**

A layer-2 primary volume in a ShadowImage cascade configuration. The secondary volume of a layer-2 pair is called a leaf volume. See also *cascade configuration*.

## **NUM**

number

## **O**

### **OPEN-V**

A logical unit (LU) of user-defined size for use by open-systems hosts.

### **OPEN-x**

A logical unit (LU) of fixed size (for example, OPEN-3, OPEN-9) that is used primarily for sharing data between mainframe and open-systems hosts using Hitachi Cross-OS File Exchange.

## **P**

### **P-VOL**

See *primary volume*.

### **pair**

Two logical volumes in a replication relationship in which one volume contains original data to be copied and the other volume contains the copy of the original data. The copy operations can be synchronous or asynchronous, and the pair volumes can be located in the same storage system (in-system replication) or in different storage systems (remote replication).

### **pair status**

Indicates the condition of a copy pair. A pair must have a specific status for specific operations. When a pair operation completes, the status of the pair changes to a different status determined by the type of operation.

### **parity group**

See *RAID group*.

## **PG**

parity group. See *RAID group*.

### **pool**

A set of volumes that are reserved for storing Hitachi Thin Image data or Dynamic Provisioning write data.

**pool volume (pool-VOL)**

A logical volume that is reserved for storing snapshot data for Hitachi Thin Image or write data for Dynamic Provisioning.

**PPRC**

Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy

**primary site**

The physical location of a storage system that contains original data to be replicated and that is connected to one or more storage systems at a remote or secondary site via remote copy connections. A primary site can also be called a "main site" or "local site".

The term "primary site" is also used for host failover operations. In that case, the primary site is the location of the host on which the production applications are running, and the secondary site is the location of the host on which the backup applications that run when the applications at the primary site have failed.

**primary volume (P-VOL)**

The volume in a copy pair that contains the original data to be replicated. The data on the P-VOL is duplicated synchronously or asynchronously on the secondary volume (S-VOL). See also *secondary volume (S-VOL)*.

**Q****quick format**

The quick format feature in Virtual LVI/Virtual LUN in which the formatting of the internal volumes is done in the background. This allows system configuration (such as defining a path or creating a TrueCopy pair) before the formatting is completed. To execute quick formatting, the volumes must be in blocked status.

**quick restore**

A reverse resynchronization in which no data is actually copied: the primary and secondary volumes are swapped.

**quick split**

A split operation in which the pair is split, and then the differential data is copied to the secondary volume (S-VOL). Any remaining differential data is copied to the S-VOL in the background. The benefit is that the S-VOL becomes immediately available for read and write I/O.

**quorum disk**

Used to determine the volume in the global-active device pair on which server I/O should continue when a failure occurs in a path or a storage system. Quorum disks reside in an external storage system.

**R****R/W**

read/write

**RAID**

redundant array of inexpensive disks

**RAID group**

A redundant array of inexpensive drives (RAID) that have the same capacity and are treated as one group for data storage and recovery. A RAID group contains both user data and parity information, which allows the user data to be accessed in the event that one or more of the drives within the RAID group are not available. The RAID level of a RAID group determines the number of data drives and parity drives and how the data is "striped" across the drives. For RAID1, user data is duplicated within the RAID group, so there is no parity data for RAID1 RAID groups.

A RAID group can also be called an array group or a parity group.

**RAID level**

The type of RAID implementation. RAID levels include RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 2, RAID 3, RAID 4, RAID 5 and RAID 6.

**RCU**

See *remote control unit (RCU)*.

**remote control unit (RCU)**

A storage system at a secondary, or remote, site that is configured to receive remote I/O instructions from one or more storage systems at the primary, or main, site. See also main control unit.

**remote site**

See *secondary site*.

**resync**

resynchronize

**RMI**

Remote Method Invocation

**root volume**

A layer-1 primary volume in a ShadowImage cascade configuration. The secondary volume of a layer-1 pair is called a node volume. See also *cascade configuration*.

**RTC**

real-time clock

**RTO**

recovery time objective

**S****S#**

serial number

**S-VOL**

See *secondary volume* or *source volume*. When used for "secondary volume", "S-VOL" is only seen in the earlier version of the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI (still in use).

**S/N**

serial number

**s/w**

software

**SAS**

serial-attached SCSI

**SC**

storage control

**SCDS**

source control dataset

## **SCI**

state change interrupt

## **scripting**

The use of command line scripts, or spreadsheets downloaded by Configuration File Loader to automate storage management operations.

## **SCSI**

small computer system interface. A standard that defines I/O buses primarily intended for connecting storage systems and devices to hosts through host bus adapters.

## **secondary site**

The physical location of the storage system that contains the primary volumes of remote replication pairs at the primary site. The storage system at the secondary site is connected to the storage system at the primary site via remote copy connections. The secondary site can also be called the "remote site". See also *primary site*.

## **secondary volume (S-VOL)**

After a backup, the volume in a copy pair that is the copy of the original data on the primary volume (P-VOL). Recurring differential data updates keep the data in the S-VOL consistent with the data in the P-VOL. See also *primary volume (P-VOL)*.

## **service information message (SIM)**

Messages generated by a RAID storage system when it detects an error or service requirement. SIMs are reported to hosts and displayed on Device Manager - Storage Navigator.

## **service processor (SVP)**

The computer inside a RAID storage system that hosts the Device Manager - Storage Navigator software and is used by service personnel for configuration and maintenance of the storage system.

## **severity level**

Applies to service information messages (SIMs) and Device Manager - Storage Navigator error codes.



**shared volume**

A volume that is being used by more than one replication function. For example, a volume that is the primary volume of a TrueCopy pair and the primary volume of a ShadowImage pair is a shared volume.

**SI**

Hitachi ShadowImage®

**sidefile**

An area of cache memory that is used to store updated data for later integration into the copied data.

**SIM**

service information message

**Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)**

An industry-standard protocol that is used to manage and monitor network-attached devices for conditions that warrant administrative attention. The devices can include disk devices, routers, and hubs. SNMP uses Simple Gateway Management Protocol (SGMP) to manage TCP/IP gateways.

**SIz**

Hitachi ShadowImage® for Mainframe

**size**

Generally refers to the storage capacity of a memory module or cache. Not usually used for storage of data on disk or flash drives.

**SLU**

See *subsidiary logical unit*.

**SM**

shared memory

**SN**

serial number; Device Manager - Storage Navigator

## **snapshot**

A point-in-time virtual copy of a Hitachi Thin Image primary volume (P-VOL). The snapshot is maintained when the P-VOL is updated by storing pre-updated data (snapshot data) in a data pool.

## **SNMP**

See *Simple Network Management Protocol*.

## **source volume (S-VOL)**

The volume containing the original data that is duplicated on the target volume (T-VOL). Also known as *primary volume*.

## **space**

Generally refers to the storage capacity of a data drive (for example, hard disk drive, flash drive).

## **SS**

snapshot

## **SSB**

sense byte

## **SSD**

solid-state drive. Also called flash drive.

## **SSID**

See *storage subsystem identifier*.

## **storage subsystem identifier (SSID)**

In a mainframe environment, SSIDs are used for reporting information from the control unit (CU) image to the mainframe operating system. An SSID is assigned to each group of 64 or 256 volumes to define one or four SSIDs per CU image. The user-specified SSIDs are assigned during storage system installation and must be unique to all connected host operating environments.

## **subsidiary logical unit (SLU)**

An LU used for the conglomerate LUN structure, a SCSI architecture model. An SLU is an LU that stores actual data. You can use a DP-VOL or snapshot data (or a V-VOL allocated to snapshot data) as an SLU. All host

access to SLUs is through the administrative logical unit (ALU). An SLU is called a virtual volume (VVol) in vSphere. See *administrative logical unit*.

## T

### T-VOL

See *target volume*.

### target volume (T-VOL)

The volume in a mainframe copy pair that is the copy of the original data on the source volume (S-VOL). The term is used only in the earlier version of the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI (still in use), for the following Hitachi products: ShadowImage for Mainframe, Dataset Replication, and Compatible FlashCopy® V2.

See also *source volume*.

### TC

Hitachi TrueCopy®

### TCz

Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe

### TID

target ID

### total capacity

The aggregate amount of storage space in a data storage system.

## U

### update copy

An operation that copies differential data on the primary volume of a copy pair to the secondary volume. Update copy operations are performed in response to write I/Os on the primary volume after the initial copy operation is completed.

### UR

Hitachi Universal Replicator

### UR

Hitachi Universal Replicator

## **URz**

Hitachi Universal Replicator software for Mainframe

## **URz**

Hitachi Universal Replicator software for Mainframe

## **V**

## **v**

version; variable length and de-blocking (mainframe record format)

## **V-VOL**

See *virtual volume*.

## **V-VOL management area**

Contains the pool management block and pool association information for Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering, and Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, and Thin Image operations. The V-VOL management area is created automatically when additional shared memory is installed.

## **VB**

variable length and blocking (mainframe record format)

## **view mode**

The mode of operation of Device Manager - Storage Navigator that allows viewing only of the storage system configuration. See also *modify mode*.

## **virtual device (VDEV)**

A group of logical devices (LDEVs) in a RAID group. A VDEV typically consists of some fixed volumes (FVs) and some free space. The number of fixed volumes is determined by the RAID level and device emulation type.

## **Virtual LVI/LUN**

A custom-size volume whose size is defined by the user using Virtual LVI/LUN. Also called a custom volume (CV).

**virtual volume (V-VOL)**

A logical volume in a storage system that has no physical storage space. Hitachi Thin Image uses V-VOLs as secondary volumes of copy pairs. In Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning, V-VOLs are referred to as DP-VOLs.

**VOL, vol**

See *volume (VOL or vol)*.

**volume (VOL or vol)**

A logical device (LDEV), or a set of concatenated LDEVs in the case of LUSE, that has been defined to one or more hosts as a single data storage unit. An open-systems volume is called a logical unit (LU), and a mainframe volume is called a logical volume image (LVI).

**volume pair**

See *copy pair*.

**W****write order**

The order of write I/Os to the primary volume (P-VOL) of a copy pair. The data on the secondary volume (S-VOL) is updated in the same order as on the P-VOL, particularly when there are multiple write operations in one update cycle. This feature maintains data consistency at the secondary volume. Update records are sorted in the cache at the remote system to ensure proper write sequencing.



# Index

## Numerics

- 3DC cascade configuration 42
- 3DC multitarget configuration 40, 41

## A

- abbreviations 52
- access attributes
  - sharing volumes with access attributes 33
- acronyms 52

## B

- backup
  - of volumes in 3DC cascade configuration 42
  - of volumes in 3DC multitarget configuration 40, 41
- blocked pools
  - recovering 157
  - troubleshooting 170
- blocked volumes
  - troubleshooting 170

## C

- capacity
  - increasing for pools 142
  - licensing requirements 54
- CAW 27
- CCI
  - command device 89
  - command reference 177
  - troubleshooting with 179
- command device 89
- completing
  - SIMs for pool problems 175
- components 20
- configuring 67
- consistency groups 20
  - requirements 59
- control memory
  - requirements 55
- copy threshold option 31
- COW 27

- creating
  - data pools 69
  - LDEVs 82
  - pools 69

## D

- data pools
  - creating 69
  - requirements 58
- definitions
  - pair status 127
- deleting
  - pools 159
  - snapshot data 111
  - V-VOLs 164
  - virtual volumes 164

## E

- editing
  - the pool threshold 152

## G

- groups
  - consistency 20
  - creating, and storing snapshot data 25
  - snapshot 20

## H

- Histories window 208
- host access
  - troubleshooting 170

## I

- increasing
  - pool capacity 142
- installing 54

## L

- LDEVs
  - creating 82
- licenses
  - capacity requirements 54

## M

- maintaining 121
- managing
  - pairs 93
- memory
  - control memory requirements 55
  - shared memory requirements 55
- methods
  - storing snapshot data 27
- monitoring 121
  - pool information 139

## O

- options
  - copy threshold 31
- overview 17

## P

- pair
  - status for CCI operations 178
- pairs
  - background task processing 65
  - elements of 20
  - host access and pair status 30
  - how created 24
  - how status changes 29
  - maintaining during maintenance 165
  - management 93
  - monitoring 135
  - restoration 29
  - resynchronizing 111
  - status definitions 127
  - task history 135
  - viewing properties 127
  - viewing synchronization rates 128
- parity groups
  - rebalancing
    - parity group usage 23
  - rebalancing usage 23
- performance
  - copy threshold option 31
  - host server I/O 31
- planning
  - requirements 53
- pool threshold exceeded
  - troubleshooting 170
- pool volumes
  - relationship to pools 22
  - selecting 72

## pools

- changing
    - pool names 155
  - changing names 155
  - creating 69
  - deleting 159
  - editing the pool threshold 152
  - increasing capacity 142
  - monitoring 139
  - recovering from blocks 157
  - relationship to pool volumes 22
  - selecting volumes 72
- ## power
- maintaining pairs when switching off 165

## R

- raidcom commands
  - creating groups and storing snapshot data 25
- recovering
  - blocked pools 157
- reference
  - CCI 177
  - GUI elements 189
- removing 54
- requirements
  - consistency groups 59
  - control memory 55
  - data pools 58
  - licensed capacity 54
  - planning 53
  - shared memory 55
  - snapshot groups 60
  - system 53, 54
  - volumes 56
- resource groups 52
- restoring
  - pairs 29
- resynchronizing
  - pairs 111

## S

- selecting
  - pool volumes 72
- shared memory
  - requirements 55
- sharing
  - of volumes between applications 32
  - of volumes with access attributes 33
- SIMs
  - for pool problems 175
  - manually completing 175
- SM
  - requirements 55
- snapshot data
  - deleting 111
  - methods of storing 27
  - replacing 19



- storing 19
  - workflow 19
- snapshot groups 20
  - requirements 60
- software
  - included applications 21
- status
  - host access and pair status 30
  - how pair status changes 29
- storing
  - snapshot data 27
- switching off
  - storage system power 165
- synchronization
  - viewing rates 128
- system
  - requirements 53, 54

## T

- thresholds
  - data pool warning 152
- troubleshooting 169
  - blocked pools 170
  - blocked volumes 170
  - host access 170
  - pool threshold exceeded 170
  - with CCI 179

## U

- uninstalling 54

## V

- V-VOLs
  - deleting 164
  - how used 24
  - registering 75
  - releasing 24
- viewing
  - pair properties 127
  - pair task history 135
- virtual volumes
  - deleting 164
- volumes
  - deleting 164
  - requirements 56
  - sharing with other applications 32
  - used 21
  - used volumes 21

## W

- workflow
  - overview 18
- workflows
  - creating groups and storing snapshot data 25





## **Hitachi Data Systems**

### **Corporate Headquarters**

2845 Lafayette Street  
Santa Clara, California 95050-2639  
U.S.A.  
[www.hds.com](http://www.hds.com)

### **Regional Contact Information**

#### **Americas**

+1 408 970 1000  
[info@hds.com](mailto:info@hds.com)

#### **Europe, Middle East, and Africa**

+44 (0) 1753 618000  
[info.emea@hds.com](mailto:info.emea@hds.com)

#### **Asia Pacific**

+852 3189 7900  
[hds.marketing.apac@hds.com](mailto:hds.marketing.apac@hds.com)



**MK-92RD8011-06**